

## Hard disk drive specifications

# Ultrastar 146Z10

3.5 inch SCSI hard disk drive



Models: IC35L018UWDY10  
IC35L018UCDY10  
IC35L036UWDY10  
IC35L036UCDY10  
IC35L073UWDY10  
IC35L073UCDY10  
IC35L146UWDY10  
IC35L146UCDY10

Revision 2.2

02 February 2002

---

This page intentionally left blank.



## Hard disk drive specifications

# Ultrastar 146Z10

3.5 inch SCSI hard disk drive



Models: IC35L018UWDY10  
IC35L018UCDY10  
IC35L036UWDY10  
IC35L036UCDY10  
IC35L073UWDY10  
IC35L073UCDY10  
IC35L146UWDY10  
IC35L146UCDY10

Revision 2.2

02 February 2002

---

**1st Edition (Rev. 2.0) S07N9742-01 (31 January 2002)**  
**2nd Edition (Rev. 2.1) S07N9742-02 (01 February 2002)**  
**3rd Edition (Rev. 2.2) S07N9742-03 (02 February 2002)**

**The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer or express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time.

It is possible that this publication may contain reference to, or information about, IBM products (machines and programs), programming, or services that are not announced in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that IBM intends to announce such IBM products, programming, or services in your country.

Technical information about this product is available by contacting your local IBM representative or the following:

Internet: <http://www.ibm.com/harddrive>

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Commercial Relations, IBM Corporation, Armonk, NY 10577.

**©Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2002. All rights reserved.**

Note to U.S. Government Users —Documentation related to restricted rights —Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

---

# Table of contents

<b>Figures</b> .....	ix
<b>1.0 General</b> .....	1
1.1 Introduction .....	1
1.2 Glossary .....	1
1.3 General caution .....	2
<b>2.0 Outline of the drive</b> .....	3
<b>Part 1. Functional specification</b> .....	5
<b>3.0 Fixed disk subsystem description</b> .....	7
3.1 Control electronics .....	7
3.2 Head disk assembly .....	7
3.3 Actuator .....	7
<b>4.0 Drive characteristics</b> .....	9
4.1 Formatted capacity .....	9
4.2 Data sheet .....	9
4.3 Inquiry Information .....	10
4.3.1 <i>Product ID</i> .....	10
4.3.2 <i>World Wide ID - Block assignment</i> .....	10
4.4 Cylinder allocation .....	11
4.5 Performance characteristics .....	12
4.5.1 <i>Command overhead</i> .....	12
4.5.2 <i>Mechanical positioning</i> .....	13
4.5.3 <i>Drive ready time</i> .....	14
4.5.4 <i>Spindle stop time</i> .....	14
4.5.5 <i>Data transfer speed</i> .....	15
4.5.6 <i>Buffering operation (read ahead/write cache)</i> .....	15
4.5.7 <i>Throughput</i> .....	16
<b>5.0 Data integrity</b> .....	17
5.1 Equipment status .....	17
5.2 Error recovery procedure .....	17
<b>6.0 Physical format</b> .....	19
6.1 Shipped format (P-List) .....	19
6.2 Reassigned format (G-List) .....	19
<b>7.0 Specification</b> .....	21
7.1 Electrical interface specification .....	21
7.1.1 <i>Power connector</i> .....	21
7.1.2 <i>SCSI bus connector</i> .....	22
7.1.3 <i>SCSI cable</i> .....	24
7.1.4 <i>SCSI bus terminator</i> .....	24
7.1.5 <i>Hot plug/unplug</i> .....	24
7.1.6 <i>SCSI bus electrical characteristics</i> .....	24
7.1.7 <i>Auxiliary connector on 68-pin model</i> .....	25
7.2 Option jumper block .....	26
7.2.1 <i>Jumper signal description on J6</i> .....	27
7.2.2 <i>Jumper signal description on J4</i> .....	28
7.3 Environment .....	30
7.3.1 <i>Corrosion test</i> .....	30
7.4 Cooling requirements .....	31
7.5 DC power requirements .....	32
7.5.1 <i>Input voltage</i> .....	32

7.5.2	<i>Power supply current</i>	32
7.5.3	<i>Ripple voltage</i>	33
7.5.4	<i>Power consumption efficiency index</i>	33
7.6	Reliability	34
7.6.1	<i>Start/stop cycles</i>	34
7.6.2	<i>Data reliability</i>	34
7.6.3	<i>Seek/ID miscompare errors</i>	34
7.6.4	<i>Equipment errors</i>	34
7.6.5	<i>Failure prediction (PFA/S.M.A.R.T.)</i>	34
7.6.6	<i>Preventive maintenance</i>	34
7.6.7	<i>Temperature Warning</i>	35
7.7	Mechanical specifications	36
7.7.1	<i>Outline</i>	36
7.7.2	<i>Mechanical dimensions</i>	37
7.7.3	<i>Interface connector</i>	38
7.7.4	<i>Mounting positions and tappings</i>	39
7.7.5	<i>Heads unload and actuator lock</i>	40
7.7.6	<i>Breather hole</i>	40
7.8	Vibration and shock	41
7.8.1	<i>Operating vibration</i>	41
7.8.2	<i>Non-operating vibrations</i>	41
7.8.3	<i>Operating shock</i>	42
7.8.4	<i>Non-operating shock</i>	42
7.9	Acoustics	43
7.10	Identification labels	44
7.11	Electromagnetic compatibility	45
7.11.1	<i>CE Mark</i>	45
7.11.2	<i>C-Tick Mark</i>	45
7.11.3	<i>BSMI Mark</i>	45
7.12	Safety	46
7.12.1	<i>UL and CSA standard conformity</i>	46
7.12.2	<i>European Standards Compliance</i>	46
7.12.3	<i>German Safety Mark</i>	46
7.12.4	<i>Flammability</i>	46
	<b>Part 2. Interface specification</b>	47
<b>8.0</b>	<b>SCSI Command Set</b>	49
8.1	SCSI Control Byte	50
8.2	Abbreviations	50
8.3	Byte ordering conventions	50
8.4	FORMAT UNIT (04h)	51
8.4.1	<i>Defect list</i>	52
8.4.2	<i>Defect descriptor</i>	53
8.5	INQUIRY (12h)	55
8.5.1	<i>Inquiry DATA</i>	57
8.6	LOG SELECT (4Ch)	64
8.7	LOG SENSE (4Dh)	65
8.7.1	<i>Log Page parameters</i>	66
8.7.2	<i>Log Sense Page 0</i>	67
8.7.3	<i>Log Sense Page 2</i>	68
8.7.4	<i>Log Sense Page 3</i>	70
8.7.5	<i>Log Sense Page 5</i>	72
8.7.6	<i>Log Sense Page 6</i>	73
8.7.7	<i>Log Sense Page D</i>	74
8.7.8	<i>Log Sense Page E</i>	75

8.7.9	Log Sense Page F	76
8.7.10	Log Sense Page 10	77
8.7.11	Log Sense Page 2F	79
8.8	MODE SENSE (6) (1A)	80
8.8.1	Mode Parameter List	81
8.8.2	Mode Page 0 (Vendor Unique Parameters)	85
8.8.3	Mode Page 1 (Read/Write Error Recovery Parameters)	88
8.8.4	Mode Page 2 (Disconnect/Reconnect Parameters)	92
8.8.5	Mode Page 3 (Format Device Parameters)	94
8.8.6	Mode Page 4 (Rigid Disk Drive Geometry Parameters)	96
8.8.7	Mode Page 7 (Verify Error Recovery Parameters)	97
8.8.8	Mode Page 8 (Caching Parameters)	98
8.8.9	Mode Page A (Control Mode Page Parameters)	100
8.8.10	Mode Page 0C (Notch Parameters)	102
8.8.11	Mode Page 19 (Port Control)	104
8.8.12	Mode Page 1A (Power Control Parameters)	110
8.8.13	Mode Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)	111
8.9	MODE SENSE (10) (5Ah)	113
8.10	MODE SELECT (6) (15h)	114
8.11	MODE SELECT (10) (55h)	115
8.12	PERSISTENT RESERVE IN (5Eh)	116
8.12.1	Service Action	116
8.12.2	Parameter data for Read Keys	117
8.12.3	Parameter data for Read Reservations	117
8.12.4	Parameter data for Read Reservation Descriptor	118
8.13	PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT (5Fh)	119
8.13.1	Service Action	120
8.13.2	Scope	122
8.13.3	Type	122
8.13.4	Parameter list	124
8.13.5	Summary	124
8.14	PRE-FETCH (34h)	126
8.15	READ (6) (08h)	127
8.16	READ (10) (28h)	128
8.17	READ BUFFER (ACH)	129
8.17.1	Combined Header And Data (Mode 0000b)	130
8.17.2	Read Data (Mode 0010b)	130
8.17.3	Descriptor (Mode 0011b)	130
8.17.4	Read Data from Echo Buffer (Mode 1010b)	131
8.17.5	Echo Buffer Descriptor (Mode 1011b)	131
8.18	READ CAPACITY (25h)	132
8.19	READ DEFECT DATA (10) (37h)	134
8.19.1	Defect List Header	135
8.19.2	Bytes from Index Format (100b)	135
8.19.3	Physical Sector Format (101b)	136
8.20	READ DEFECT DATA (12) (B7h)	137
8.20.1	Defect List Header	138
8.20.2	Bytes from Index Format (100b)	138
8.20.3	Physical Sector Format (101b)	139
8.21	READ LONG (3Eh)	140
8.22	REASSIGN BLOCKS (07h)	141
8.23	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS (1Ch)	143
8.23.1	Receive Diagnostic Results Page 0	143

8.23.2	Receive Diagnostic Results Page 40	144
8.23.3	Receive Diagnostic Results Page 80	145
8.24	RELEASE (6) (17h)	146
8.25	RELEASE (10) (57h)	147
8.26	REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER (A3h)	148
8.27	REPORT LUN (A0h)	150
8.28	REQUEST SENSE (03h)	151
8.29	RESERVE (6) (16h)	152
8.30	RESERVE (10) (56h)	153
8.31	REZERO UNIT (01h)	154
8.32	SEEK (6) (0Bh)	155
8.33	SEEK EXTENDED (10) (2Bh)	156
8.34	SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)	157
8.34.1	Send Diagnostic Page 0	159
8.34.2	Send Diagnostic Page 40	159
8.34.3	Send Diagnostic Page 80	160
8.35	SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER (A4h)	161
8.36	START STOP Unit (1Bh)	162
8.37	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE (35h)	163
8.38	TEST UNIT READY (00h)	164
8.39	VERIFY (2Fh)	165
8.40	WRITE (6) (0Ah)	166
8.41	WRITE (10) (2Ah)	167
8.42	WRITE AND VERIFY (2Eh)	168
8.43	WRITE BUFFER (3Bh)	169
8.43.1	Combined Header And Data (Mode 0000b)	170
8.43.2	Write Data (Mode 0010b)	170
8.43.3	Download Microcode (Mode 0100b)	171
8.43.4	Download Microcode and Save (Mode 0101b)	171
8.43.5	Download Microcode and Save (Mode 0111b)	172
8.43.6	Write Data to Echo Buffer (Mode 1010b)	172
8.44	WRITE LONG (3Fh)	173
8.45	WRITE SAME (41h)	174
<b>9.0</b>	<b>SCSI Status Byte</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>10.0</b>	<b>SCSI Message System</b>	<b>177</b>
10.1	Supported Messages	177
10.1.1	TASK COMPLETE (00h)	178
10.1.2	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (010301H)	178
10.1.3	WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (010203H)	181
10.1.4	PARALLEL PROTOCOL REQUEST (01,06,04H)	183
10.1.5	SAVE DATA POINTER (02h)	185
10.1.6	RESTORE POINTERS (03h)	185
10.1.7	DISCONNECT (04h)	185
10.1.8	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR (05h)	185
10.1.9	ABORT (06h)	186
10.1.10	MESSAGE REJECT (07h)	186
10.1.11	NO OPERATION (08h)	186
10.1.12	MESSAGE PARITY ERROR (09h)	186
10.1.13	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (0Ah)	186
10.1.14	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE WITH FLAG (0Bh)	187
10.1.15	TARGET RESET (0Ch)	187
10.1.16	ABORT TAG (0Dh)	187
10.1.17	CLEAR QUEUE TAG (0Eh)	187



10.1.18	QUEUE TAG MESSAGES (20xxh, 21xxh, 22xxh)	187
10.1.19	IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE (2301h)	188
10.1.20	IDENTIFY (80 - FFh)	188
10.2	Supported Message Functions	189
10.3	Attention Condition	190
10.4	SCSI Bus Related Error Handling Protocol	191
10.4.1	Unexpected BUS FREE Phase Error Condition	191
10.4.2	MESSAGE OUT Phase Parity Error	191
10.4.3	MESSAGE IN Phase Parity Error (Message Parity Error)	191
10.4.4	COMMAND Phase Parity Error	191
10.4.5	DATA OUT Phase Parity Error	191
10.4.6	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message	192
10.4.7	MESSAGE REJECT Message	192
<b>11.0</b>	<b>Additional information</b>	<b>193</b>
11.1	SCSI Protocol	193
11.1.1	Priority of SCSI Status Byte Reporting	193
11.1.2	Invalid LUN in Identify Message	194
11.1.3	Incorrect Initiator Connection	194
11.1.4	Command Processing during execution of active I/O process	194
11.1.5	Unit Attention Condition	196
11.1.6	Command Processing During Startup and Format Operations	197
11.1.7	Deferred Error	197
11.1.8	Degraded Mode	197
11.1.9	Command processing while reserved	203
11.2	Priority commands	204
11.3	Command queuing	204
11.3.1	Queue depth	205
11.3.2	Tagged queuing	205
11.3.3	Untagged queuing	205
11.3.4	Command queuing rule	205
11.3.5	Queue Full status	205
11.3.6	Device behavior on Command queuing	205
11.4	Command reordering	206
11.5	Concurrent I/O Process	206
11.6	Back to Back Write	206
11.7	Write Cache	207
11.8	Automatic Defect Reallocation	207
11.9	Segmented Caching	208
11.10	Reselection Timeout	208
11.11	Single Initiator Selection	208
11.12	Non-arbitrating systems	208
11.13	Selection without ATN	208
11.14	Multiple Initiator Environment	209
11.14.1	Initiator Sense Data	209
11.14.2	Initiator Mode Select/Mode Sense Parameters	209
11.14.3	Initiator Data Transfer Mode Parameter	209
11.15	Contingent Allegiance Condition	209
11.16	Reset	210
11.16.1	Reset Sources	210
11.16.2	Power On Reset	210
11.16.3	SCSI Bus Reset and TARGET RESET Message	211
11.16.4	Self-initiated Reset	211
11.17	Diagnostics	212

11.17.1	<i>Power on Diagnostics</i>	212
11.17.2	<i>Self-test by Send Diagnostic Command</i>	212
11.18	<i>Idle Time Function</i>	214
11.19	<i>Information Unit Support</i>	214
<b>12.0</b>	<b>SCSI Sense Data</b>	215
12.1	<i>SCSI Sense Data Format</i>	215
12.2	<i>Sense Data Description</i>	216
12.2.1	<i>Valid (Bit 7 of byte 0)</i>	216
12.2.2	<i>Error Code (Bit 6 - 0 of byte 0)</i>	216
12.2.3	<i>ILL: Incorrect Length Indicator (Bit 5 of byte 2)</i>	216
12.2.4	<i>Sense Key (Bit 3 - 0 of byte 2)</i>	216
12.2.5	<i>Information Bytes (Byte 3 through 6)</i>	217
12.2.6	<i>Additional Sense Length (Byte 7)</i>	217
12.2.7	<i>Command Specific Information (Byte 8 through 11)</i>	217
12.2.8	<i>Additional Sense Code/Qualifier (Byte 12 and 13)</i>	218
12.2.9	<i>FRU : Field Replaceable Unit (Byte 14)</i>	222
12.2.10	<i>Sense Key Specific (Byte 15 through 17)</i>	222
12.2.11	<i>Vendor Unique Error Information (Byte 18 through 19)</i>	224
12.2.12	<i>Vendor unique error information (Byte 20 through 23)</i>	225
12.2.13	<i>Physical Error Record (Byte 24 thru 29)</i>	230
12.2.14	<i>Reserved (Byte 30 through 31)</i>	230
<b>Index</b>		231

---

## Figures

Figure 1. Formatted capacity .....	9
Figure 2. Data sheet .....	9
Figure 3. Product ID in Inquiry Command .....	10
Figure 4. Block assignment of World Wide ID in Inquiry Command .....	10
Figure 5. Cylinder allocation .....	11
Figure 6. Command overhead .....	12
Figure 7. Mechanical positioning performance .....	13
Figure 8. Full stroke seek time .....	13
Figure 9. Cylinder Skew .....	14
Figure 10. Head skew .....	14
Figure 11. Latency time .....	14
Figure 12. Drive ready time .....	14
Figure 13. Spindle stop time .....	14
Figure 14. Data transfer speed (sector size 512 bytes case) .....	15
Figure 15. Simple sequential access performance (sector size 512 byte case) .....	16
Figure 16. Random access performance (sector size 512 bytes case) .....	16
Figure 17. P-List physical format .....	19
Figure 18. Power connector pin assignments .....	21
Figure 19. Table of signals .....	22
Figure 20. Table of signals .....	23
Figure 21. Auxiliary connector .....	25
Figure 22. Jumper pins .....	26
Figure 23. Auto Start Delay & Delay Start 6/12 drive behavior .....	27
Figure 24. LED circuit .....	28
Figure 25. SCSI device ID .....	29
Figure 26. Operating and non-operating conditions .....	30
Figure 27. Temperature and relative humidity .....	30
Figure 28. Maximum allowable module surface temperature .....	31
Figure 29. Module location .....	31
Figure 30. Input voltage .....	32
Figure 31. Power supply current of 146-GB models .....	32
Figure 32. Power supply current of 73-GB models .....	32
Figure 32. Power supply current of 36-GB models .....	33
Figure 33. Power supply current of 18-GB models .....	33
Figure 34. Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector .....	33
Figure 35. Power consumption efficiency index .....	33
Figure 36. Outline of the 68-pin model .....	36
Figure 37. Outline of the 80-pin model .....	36
Figure 38. Physical dimensions .....	37
Figure 39. Mechanical dimensions .....	37
Figure 40. Interface connector for 68-pin models .....	38
Figure 41. Interface connector for 80-pin models .....	38
Figure 42. Mounting positions and tappings .....	39
Figure 43. Breather hole location .....	40
Figure 44. Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (operating) .....	41
Figure 45. Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (non-operating) .....	41
Figure 46. A-weighted sound power levels .....	43
Figure 47. Interface definition mark, SCSI LVD/SE multimode .....	44
Figure 48. Supported SCSI commands .....	49
Figure 49. SCSI Control Byte .....	50

Figure 50. FORMAT UNIT (04h)	51
Figure 51. Format of Defect List Header	52
Figure 52. Defect descriptor - Block format.	53
Figure 53. Defect descriptor - Bytes from Index format.	54
Figure 54. Defect descriptor - Physical Sector format.	54
Figure 55. INQUIRY (12)	55
Figure 56. Page code descriptions	56
Figure 57. INQUIRY Data - CmdDt = 0EVPD = 0	57
Figure 58. Command support data format	59
Figure 59. SUPPORT values and meanings	60
Figure 60. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 00)	61
Figure 61. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 80h)	62
Figure 62. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 83h)	63
Figure 63. LOG SELECT (4C)	64
Figure 64. LOG SENSE	65
Figure 65. Log Sense Page 0	67
Figure 66. Log Sense Page 2 (part 1 of 2)	68
Figure 67. Log Sense Page 2 (part 2 of 2)	69
Figure 68. Log Sense Page 3 (part 1 of 2)	70
Figure 69. Log Sense Page 3 (part 2 of 2)	71
Figure 70. Log Sense Page 5 (part 1 of 2)	72
Figure 71. Log Sense Page 5 (part 2 of 2)	73
Figure 72. Log Sense Page 6	73
Figure 73. Log Sense Page D	74
Figure 74. Log Sense Page E	75
Figure 75. Log Sense Page F Application Client Log	76
Figure 76. Log Sense Page 10, Self-Test Results	77
Figure 77. Log Sense Page 10 Self-Test Results	78
Figure 78. Log Sense Page 10 Extended Segment Number	79
Figure 79. Log Sense Page 2F	79
Figure 80. MODE SENSE (1A)	80
Figure 81. Page Code Usage	81
Figure 82. Mode parameter header (6)	81
Figure 83. Mode parameter header (10)	82
Figure 84. MODE Parameter Block Descriptor	83
Figure 85. MODE Parameter Page Format	84
Figure 86. Page Code Usage	84
Figure 87. Vendor Unique Parameters - Page 0	85
Figure 88. Mode Page 1 (Vendor Unique Parameters)	88
Figure 89. Mode Page 2 (Disconnect/Reconnect Parameters)	92
Figure 90. Mode Page 3 (Format Device Parameters)	94
Figure 91. Mode Page 4 (Rigid Disk Drive Geometry Parameters)	96
Figure 92. Mode Page 7 (Verify Error Recovery Parameters)	97
Figure 93. Page 8 (Caching Parameters)	98
Figure 94. Page A (Control Mode Page Parameters)	100
Figure 95. Page 0C (Notch Parameters)	102
Figure 96. Page 19 (Port Control parameters) Short format	104
Figure 97. Page 19 (Port Control Parameters) Long Format	105
Figure 98. Margin Control Subpage	106
Figure 99. Saved Training Configuration Subpage	107
Figure 100. Negotiated Settings Subpage	108
Figure 101. Report Transfer Capabilities Subpage	109
Figure 102. Page 1A (Power Control)	110
Figure 103. Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)	111

Figure 104. MODE SENSE (10)	113
Figure 105. MODE SELECT (6)	114
Figure 106. MODE SELECT (10)	115
Figure 107. Persistent Reserve In	116
Figure 108. Persistent Reserve In Service Action Codes	116
Figure 109. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN parameter data for Read Keys	117
Figure 110. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN parameter data for Read Reservations	117
Figure 111. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN Read Reservation Descriptor	118
Figure 112. Persistent Reserve Out (5F)	119
Figure 113. Persistent Reservation Service Action Code	120
Figure 114. Persistent Reservation Scope Code	122
Figure 115. Persistent Reservation Type Code	122
Figure 116. Conflict between new and existing PERSISTENT RESERVATION	123
Figure 117. PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT parameter list	124
Figure 118. Service Action and parameters and generation counter	124
Figure 119. APTPL and information held by a drive	125
Figure 120. Pre-Fetch	126
Figure 121. READ (6)	127
Figure 122. READ (10)	128
Figure 123. READ BUFFER	129
Figure 124. READ BUFFER Header	130
Figure 125. Read Buffer Descriptor	131
Figure 126. Echo Buffer Descriptor	131
Figure 127. READ CAPACITY	132
Figure 128. Format of READ CAPACITY command reply	133
Figure 129. Read Defect Data (10)	134
Figure 130. Defect List Header	135
Figure 131. Defect Descriptors of Bytes from Index Format	135
Figure 132. Defect Descriptors of Physical Sector Format	136
Figure 133. Read Defect Data (12)	137
Figure 134. Defect List Header	138
Figure 135. Defect Descriptors of Bytes from Index Format	138
Figure 136. Defect Descriptors of Physical Sector Format	139
Figure 137. READ LONG	140
Figure 138. REASSIGN BLOCKS	141
Figure 139. Format of REASSIGN BLOCKS data	142
Figure 140. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC	143
Figure 141. Receive Diagnostic Results Page 0	143
Figure 142. Receive Diagnostic Results Page 40	144
Figure 143. Translated address	145
Figure 144. Receive Diagnostic Results Page 80	145
Figure 145. RELEASE (6)	146
Figure 146. RELEASE (10)	147
Figure 147. REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER	148
Figure 148. REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER parameter list	149
Figure 149. REPORT LUN	150
Figure 150. LUN Reporting Parameter List Format	150
Figure 151. REQUEST SENSE	151
Figure 152. RESERVE (6)	152
Figure 153. RESERVE (10)	153
Figure 154. REZERO UNIT	154
Figure 155. SEEK (6)	155
Figure 156. SEEK (10)	156
Figure 157. SEND DIAGNOSTIC	157

Figure 158. SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1D)	158
Figure 159. Diagnostic Page 0	159
Figure 160. Diagnostic Page 40	159
Figure 161. Address to translate	160
Figure 162. Send Diagnostic Page 80	160
Figure 163. SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER	161
Figure 164. SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER Parameter List	161
Figure 165. START STOP Unit	162
Figure 166. SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	163
Figure 167. TEST UNIT READY	164
Figure 168. VERIFY	165
Figure 169. WRITE (6)	166
Figure 170. WRITE (10)	167
Figure 171. WRITE AND VERIFY	168
Figure 172. WRITE BUFFER (3B)	169
Figure 173. WRITE BUFFER Header	170
Figure 174. WRITE LONG	173
Figure 175. WRITE SAME (41)	174
Figure 176. SCSI Status Byte. Format of the SCSI STATUS byte.	175
Figure 177. Supported Messages	177
Figure 178. Synchronous Data Transfer Request.	178
Figure 179. Initiator Request/Drive Response (LVD mode)	179
Figure 180. Initiator Request/Drive Response (SE mode)	179
Figure 181. Target Response to Initiator's Transfer Period (LVD mode)	180
Figure 182. Drive Response to Initiator's Transfer Period (SE mode)	180
Figure 183. Wide Data Transfer Request.	181
Figure 184. Initiator Request/Target Response	181
Figure 185. Target Request to Initiator	182
Figure 186. Parallel Protocol Request.	183
Figure 187. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT_REQ = 1, IU_REQ = 1)	183
Figure 188. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT_REQ = 1, IU_REQ = 0)	184
Figure 189. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT_REQ = 0, IU_REQ = 0)	184
Figure 190. Queue Tag Messages	187
Figure 191. Ignore Wide Residue Message Format	188
Figure 192. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Disable Auto Start	198
Figure 193. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Auto Start Delay/Spinning Up	199
Figure 194. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Spindle Start Failure	200
Figure 195. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Spindle Stopped by Start Stop Unit	201
Command	
Figure 196. Self Configuration Failure Degraded Mode	202
Figure 197. Format Command Failure Degraded Mode	203
Figure 198. Self-test menu for SEND DIAGNOSTIC command	213
Figure 199. Format of Sense Data.	215
Figure 200. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (1 of 4)	218
Figure 201. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (2 of 4)	219
Figure 202. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (3 of 4)	220
Figure 203. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (4 of 4)	221
Figure 204. Field Pointer Bytes	222
Figure 205. Actual Retry Count	223
Figure 206. Progress Indication	223
Figure 207. Sense Data Byte 18 for Error Information	224
Figure 208. Sense Data Byte 20 for POR Step	225
Figure 209. Sense Data Byte 21 for POR Step	225
Figure 210. Sense Data Byte 22 POR Error	226

Figure 211. Sense Data Byte 23 for POR Error .....	227
Figure 212. Sense Data Byte 20 for Read/Write Error .....	228
Figure 213. Sense Data Byte 21 for Read/Write Error .....	228
Figure 214. Sense Data Byte 22 for Read/Write Error .....	229
Figure 215. Sense Data Byte 23 for Read/Write Error .....	229
Figure 216. Sense Data Byte 21 for SMART Alert Reason Code .....	230





---

# 1.0 General

---

## 1.1 Introduction

This document describes the specifications of the following IBM 3.5-inch SCSI drives:

- IC35L018UWDY10 (68 pin)
- IC35L018UCDY10 (80 pin)
- IC35L036UWDY10 (68 pin)
- IC35L036UCDY10 (80 pin)
- IC35L073UWDY10 (68 pin)
- IC35L073UCDY10 (80 pin)
- IC35L146UWDY10 (68 pin)
- IC35L146UCDY10 (80 pin)

The specifications in this document are subject to change without notice.

---

## 1.2 Glossary

<b>Word</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
Kb	Kilobit
Kbpi	Kilobits per inch
Mb	Megabit
Mbps	Megabits per second
GB	Gigabyte
MB	Megabyte
KB	Kilobyte
TPI	Tracks per inch
MLC	Machine Level Control
PFA	Predictive Failure Analysis (Trademark of IBM Corp.)
S.M.A.R.T.	Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology
ADM	Automatic Drive Maintenance
SE	Single Ended SCSI
LVD	Low Voltage Differential SCSI
FC-AL	Fibre Channel - Arbitrated Loop

---

## 1.3 General caution

This drive can be damaged by ESD (Electric Static Discharge). Any damages incurred to the drive after its removal from the shipping package and the ESD protective bag are the responsibility of the user.

---

## 2.0 Outline of the drive

- Storage capacities of 146.8 GB, 73.4 GB, 36.7 GB, and 18.3 GB
- Ultra 320 and Ultra 160
- Interleave factor 1:1
- Variable Sector Size (512-528 bytes/sector)
- Tagged Command Queuing support
- Automatic read/write data transfer
- 8 MB segmented sector buffer (from 1 through 256)
- 4.7 ms seek time in read operation
- Adaptive read ahead algorithm
- Write Cache
- Back to back write
- ECC on the fly
- Automatic defect reallocation
- Self diagnostics at power on
- Closed loop actuator servo
- High level of integration of the electronics
- Non head disk contact start stop
- Spindle rotation of 10,000 RPM
- Automatic actuator lock
- PFA (SMART)
- Glass substrate disks

*NOTE: PFA (Predictive Failure Analysis) is a trademark of the IBM Corporation*

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## Part 1. Functional specification

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 3.0 Fixed disk subsystem description

---

### 3.1 Control electronics

The drive is electronically controlled by a microprocessor, logic modules, digital/analogue modules, and various drivers and receivers. The control electronics perform the following major functions:

- Perform self-checkout (diagnostics).
- Conduct a power-up sequence and calibrate the servo.
- Monitor various timers for head settling, servo failure, etc.
- Analyze servo signals to provide closed loop control. These include position error signal and estimated velocity.
- Control the voice coil motor driver to align the actuator onto a desired position.
- Monitor the actuator position and determine the target track for a seek operation.
- Constantly monitor error conditions of the servo and take corresponding action if an error occurs.
- Control starting, stopping, and rotating speed of the spindle.
- Control and interpret all interface signals between the host controller and the drive.
- Control read write accessing of the disk media, including defect management and error recovery.

---

### 3.2 Head disk assembly

The head disk assembly (HDA) is assembled in a clean room environment and contains disks, a spindle motor, actuator assembly, and voice coil motor. Air is constantly circulated and filtered when the drive is operational. Venting of the HDA is accomplished via a breather filter.

The spindle is driven directly by a brushless, sensorless DC drive motor. Dynamic braking is used to stop the spindle quickly.

---

### 3.3 Actuator

The read/write heads are mounted in the actuator. The actuator is a swing-arm assembly driven by a voice coil motor. A closed-loop positioning servo controls the movement of the actuator. An embedded servo pattern supplies feedback to the positioning servo to keep the read/write heads centered over the desired track.

The actuator assembly is balanced to allow vertical or horizontal mounting without adjustment.

When the drive is powered off, the actuator automatically moves the head to a parking position outside of the disk, where the actuator is locked.

This page intentionally left blank.



---

## 4.0 Drive characteristics

---

### 4.1 Formatted capacity

---

Description	IC35L146UWDY10	IC35L073UWDY10	IC35L036UWDY10	IC35L018UWDY10
	IC35L146UCDY10	IC35L073UCDY10	IC35L036UCDY10	IC35L018UCDY10
Label capacity	146.8 GB	73.4 GB	36.7 GB	18.35 GB
Number of heads	12	6	3	2
Number of disks	6	3	2	1
Total data bytes (512 bytes/sector)	146,815,800,320	73,407,900,160	36,703,918,080	18,351,959,040
Total logical data blocks	286,749,610 (111773AAh)	143,374,805 (88BB9D5h)	71,687,340 (445DCACH)	35,843,670 (222EE56h)

---

Figure 1. Formatted capacity

---

### 4.2 Data sheet

---

Buffer to/from media [Mb/sec]	433 - 825 Mbps
Host to/from buffer (interface transfer rate) [MB/sec]	320
Data buffer size	8192 KB
Number of buffer segments	1 - 256
Rotational speed [RPM]	10,000
Recording density [Kbpi] (Max)	548
Track density [TPI] (average)	47.9
Areal density [Mb/sq.in.]	26,263
Data zone	15

---

Figure 2. Data sheet

NOTE: KB = 1,024 bytes

---

## 4.3 Inquiry Information

### 4.3.1 Product ID

Product ID in Section 8.5.1, "Inquiry data format - CmdDt = 0 EVPD = 0" on page 57 is as follows.

---

Product ID	Description
IC35L018UWDY10-0	18.3 GB, 68 pin
IC35L018UCDY10-0	18.3 GB, 80 pin
IC35L036UWDY10-0	36.7 GB, 68 pin
IC35L036UCDY10-0	36.7 GB, 80 pin
IC35L073UWDY10-0	73.4 GB, 68 pin
IC35L073UCDY10-0	73.4 GB, 80 pin
IC35L146UWDY10-0	146.8 GB, 68 pin
IC35L146UCDY10-0	146.8 GB, 80 pin

---

Figure 3. Product ID in Inquiry Command

### 4.3.2 World Wide ID - Block assignment

Block assignment of World Wide ID in 8.5.1.5 on Page 63 is as follows.

---

Manufacturing site	Product	Block assignment
SFV, Hungary	IC35L018UWDY10-0	212h, 213h
	IC35L018UCDY10-0	
	IC35L036UWDY10-0	214h, 215h
	IC35L036UCDY10-0	
	IC35L073UWDY10-0	216h, 217h
	IC35L073UCDY10-0	
	IC35L146UWDY10-0	218h, 219h, 21Ah
IC35L146UCDY10-0		
Singapore	IC35L018UWDY10-0	716h, 717h
	IC35L018UCDY10-0	
	IC35L036UWDY10-0	718h, 719h
	IC35L036UCDY10-0	
	IC35L073UWDY10-0	71Ch, 71Dh
	IC35L073UCDY10-0	
	IC35L146UWDY10-0	71Eh, 71Fh, 720h
IC35L146UCDY10-0		

---

Figure 4. Block assignment of World Wide ID in INQUIRY Command

---

## 4.4 Cylinder allocation

---

<b>Zone</b>	<b>Physical Cylinders</b>	<b>Sectors/Track</b>
Data Zone 0	0 - 383	864
Data Zone 1	384 - 3967	840
Data Zone 2	3968 - 5631	800
Data Zone 3	5632 - 6527	780
Data Zone 4	6528 - 8703	768
Data Zone 5	8704 - 15359	720
Data Zone 6	15360 - 18047	672
Data Zone 7	18048 - 19199	660
Data Zone 8	19200 - 21503	640
Data Zone 9	21504 - 24959	600
Data Zone 10	24960 - 27775	560
Data Zone 11	27776 - 29183	540
Data Zone 12	29184 - 30719	520
Data Zone 13	30720 - 35199	480
Data Zone 14	35200 - 36735	440

---

Figure 5. Cylinder allocation

*NOTE:* Mode Page 3 (Format Device Parameters) on page 94 and Mode Page 0C (Notch Parameters) on page 102 provide methods to determine medium format and zone parameters.

---

## 4.5 Performance characteristics

The performance of a drive is characterized by the following parameters:

- Command overhead
- Mechanical head positioning
  - Seek time
  - Latency
- Data transfer speed
- Buffering operation (read ahead/write cache)

*NOTE:* All the above parameters contribute to drive performance. There are other parameters that contribute to the performance of the actual system. This specification tries to define the bare drive characteristics, not the system throughput, which depends on the system and the application.

### 4.5.1 Command overhead

Command overhead is defined as the time required:

- from last byte of command phase
- to the first byte of data phase
- excluding
  - Physical seek time
  - Latency time
  - Initiator delay with reconnections

---

<b>Read Command Case (Drive is in quiescent state)</b>	<b>Time</b>
Cache Not Hit	<400 $\mu$ s
Cache Hit	<30 $\mu$ s

---

Figure 6. Command overhead

## 4.5.2 Mechanical positioning

### 4.5.2.1 Average seek time (including settling)

Command Type		Typical (ms)	Max (ms)
Read	146 GB model	4.7	5.9
	all other models	4.7	5.7
Write	146 GB model	5.9	6.9
	all other models	5.3	6.9

Figure 7. Mechanical positioning performance

“Typical” and “Max” are given throughout the performance specification by:

**Typical** Average of the drive population tested at nominal environmental and voltage conditions.

**Max** Maximum value measured on any one drive over the full range of the environmental and voltage conditions. (See Section 7.3, "Environment" on page 30 and Section 7.5, "DC power requirements" on page 32 for ranges.)

The seek time is measured from the start of the actuator's motion to the start of **a reliable read or write operation**. “Reliable read or write” implies that error correction or recovery is not used to correct arrival problems. The average seek time is measured as the weighted average of all possible seek combinations.

$$\text{Weighted average} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^{\text{max}} (\text{max}+1-n) (T_{n.in}+T_{n.out})}{(\text{max}+1) (\text{max})}$$

Where

max = Maximum seek length

n = Seek length (1 to max)

T<sub>n.in</sub> = Inward measured seek time for an n track seek

T<sub>n.out</sub> = Outward measured seek time for an n track seek

### 4.5.2.2 Full stroke seek time

Function	Typical (ms)	Maximum (ms)
Read	10.5	11.5
Write	11.5	12.5

Figure 8. Full stroke seek time

Full stroke seek is measured as the average of 1000 full stroke seeks with a **random head switch** from both directions (inward and outward).

### 4.5.2.3 Cylinder switch time (cylinder skew)

---

	Typical (ms)
Cylinder skew	0.70

---

Figure 9. Cylinder Skew

A cylinder switch time is defined as the amount of time required by the fixed disk to access the next sequential block after reading the last sector in the current cylinder.

### 4.5.2.4 Head switch time (head skew)

---

	Typical (ms)
Head skew	0.63

---

Figure 10. Head skew

A head switch time is defined as the amount of time required by the fixed disk to access the next sequential block after reading the last sector in the current track.

### 4.5.2.5 Average latency

---

Rotation	Time for a revolution (ms)	Average Latency (ms)
10,000 RPM	6.0	3.0

---

Figure 11. Latency time

### 4.5.3 Drive ready time

---

Model	Typical (sec)	Maximum (sec)
146-GB Model	18.0	29.9
73-GB Model	15.0	29.9
36-GB Model	12.0	29.9
18-GB Model	11.0	29.9

---

Figure 12. Drive ready time

### 4.5.4 Spindle stop time

---

Model	Typical (sec)	Maximum (sec)
146-GB Model	20	30
73-GB Model	14	30
36-GB Model	14	30
18-GB Model	14	30

---

Figure 13. Spindle stop time

The period from power off to complete stop of spindle is categorized as operating, and Operating Shock criteria are applied until complete stop of spindle. Refer to Section 7.8.3, "Operating Shock" on page 42.

## 4.5.5 Data transfer speed

Description	Typical (Mbyte/s)
Disk-Buffer Transfer (Zone 0)	
Instantaneous	All models 73.7
Sustained	146-GB Model 66.7
	73-GB Model 66.6
	36-GB Model 66.4
	18-GB Model 66.2
Disk-Buffer Transfer (Zone 16)	
Instantaneous	All models 37.5
Sustained	146-GB Model 33.9
	73-GB Model 33.9
	36-GB Model 33.8
	18-GB Model 45.9
Buffer-Host	
68/80pin Ultra 320	320

Figure 14. Data transfer speed (sector size 512 bytes case)

- Instantaneous disk-buffer transfer rate is derived by  
 $(\text{Number of sectors on a track}) * 512 * (\text{revolution/sec})$   
*NOTE: The number of sectors per track varies because of the linear density recording.*
- Sustained disk-buffer transfer rate is defined by considering head/cylinder change time. This gives a local average data transfer rate. It is derived by  
 $(\text{Sustained Transfer Rate}) = A / (B + C)$   
 $A = (\text{Number of data sectors per cylinder}) * 512$   
 $B = \text{Average track change time}$   
 $C = (\# \text{ of Surface}) * (\text{One revolution time})$
- Buffer-host transfer rate defines the maximum data transfer rate on SCSI Bus. It also depends on the speed of the host.

## 4.5.6 Buffering operation (read ahead/write cache)

This hard disk drive has a buffer for read ahead and write caching. For details, refer to the SCSI interface specification.

## 4.5.7 Throughput

### 4.5.7.1 Simple sequential access

---

Operation	Typical (ms)	Max (ms)
Sequential read/write	Zone 0 <260	Zone 0 <290
	Zone 14 <510	Zone 11 <560

---

Figure 15. Simple sequential access performance (sector size 512 byte case)

The above table gives the time required to read/write for a total of 8000x consecutive blocks (16,777,216 bytes) accessed by 128 read/write commands. Typical and Max values are given by 100% and 110% of T respectively throughout the following performance description.

*NOTE: It is assumed that a host system responds instantaneously.*

$$T = A + B + C + 16,777,216/D$$

where

T = Calculated Time

A = Command Overhead (Cache No Hit)

B = Average Seek Time

C = Average Latency

D = Sustained Disk-Buffer Transfer Rate

### 4.5.7.2 Random access

---

Operation	Typical (sec)	Maximum (sec)
Random read	34	37
Random write	38	41

---

Figure 16. Random access performance (sector size 512 bytes case)

The above table gives the time required to execute a total of 1000x read/write commands which access a random LBA.

$$T = (A + B + C) * 4096$$

Where

T = Calculated Time

A = Command Overhead (Cache No Hit)

B = Average Seek Time

C = Average Latency



---

## 5.0 Data integrity

The drive retains recorded information under all non-write operations.

No more than one sector will be lost by power down during write operation while write cache is disabled. If power down occurs before completion of data transfer from write cache to disk while write cache is enabled, the data remaining in write cache will be lost. To prevent this data loss at power off, the following action is recommended:

- Confirm successful completion of SYNCHRONIZE CACHE (35h) command.

---

## 5.1 Equipment status

Equipment status is available to the host system any time the drive is not ready to read, write, or seek. This status normally exists at power-on time and will be maintained until the following conditions are satisfied:

- Access recalibration/tuning is complete.
- Spindle speed meets requirements for reliable operations.
- Self-check of drive is complete.

Appropriate error status is made available to the host system if any of the following condition occurs after the drive has become ready:

- Spindle speed goes outside of requirements for reliable operation.
- "Write fault" is detected.

---

## 5.2 Error recovery procedure

Errors occurring with the drive are handled by the error recovery procedure.

Errors that are uncorrectable after application of the error recovery procedures are reported to the host system as non-recoverable errors.

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 6.0 Physical format

Media defects are remapped to the next available sector during the Format Process in manufacturing. The mapping from LBA to the physical locations is calculated by an internally maintained table.

---

### 6.1 Shipped format (P-List)

- Data areas are optimally used
  - No extra sector is wasted as a spare throughout user data areas
  - All pushes generated by defects are absorbed by spare tracks of the inner zone
- 

#### Plist physical format



---

Figure 17. P-List physical format

*NOTE: Defects are skipped without any constraint, such as track or cylinder boundary. The calculation from LBA to physical is done automatically by internal table.*

---

### 6.2 Reassigned format (G-List)

- G-List is prepared for 1078 LBAs
- Multiple reassignment of the same LBA does not increase G-List entry
- A cylinder for spare sectors is prepared every 512 physical cylinders

*NOTE: G-List entries are part of the normal maintenance work of hard disk drives. G-List entries are possible during early drive usage and are caused mainly by handling.*

This page intentionally left blank.

---

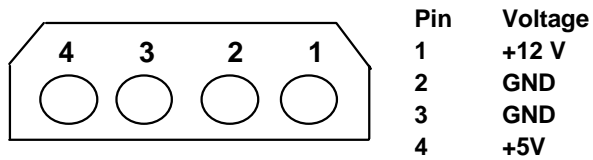
## 7.0 Specification

---

### 7.1 Electrical interface specification

#### 7.1.1 Power connector

The power connector of 68-pin models complies with the SFF-8009 Rev. 4.2. Power pin assignment of 68-pin models is as shown below.



---

Figure 18. Power connector pin assignments

Eighty-pin SCA-2 models use a DDK connector (PN HD2-PA080-A14B) or equivalent, which is compatible with the Specification of “Single Attachment for Small SCSI Disk Drives” SPI-3 document, Annex C.

Power pin assignment of the 80-pin (SCA-2) model is shown in Section 7.1.2.1 on page 22.

## 7.1.2 SCSI bus connector

The Ultrastar 146Z10 has 68-pin models and 80-pin SCA-2 models.

### 7.1.2.1 SCSI signal connector (68-pin model)

The pin assignments of the interface signals conform to SPI-4 as shown in the table below.

Connector contact number	Signal name	Connector contact number	Signal name
01	+DB(12)	35	-DB(12)
02	+DB(13)	36	-DB(13)
03	+DB(14)	37	-DB(14)
04	+DB(15)	38	-DB(15)
05	+DB(P1)	39	-DB(P1)
06	+DB(0)	40	-DB(0)
07	+DB(1)	41	-DB(1)
08	+DB(2)	42	-DB(2)
09	+DB(3)	43	-DB(3)
10	+DB(4)	44	-DB(4)
11	+DB(5)	45	-DB(5)
12	+DB(6)	46	-DB(6)
13	+DB(7)	47	-DB(7)
14	+P_CRCA	48	-P_CRCA
15	Ground	49	Ground
16	DIFFSENS(*2)	50	Ground
17	TERMPWR(*1)	51	TERMPWR(*1)
18	TERMPWR(*1)	52	TERMPWR(*1)
19	Reserved	53	Reserved
20	Ground	54	Ground
21	+ATN	55	-ATN
22	Ground	56	Ground
23	+BSY	57	-BSY
24	+ACK	58	-ACK
25	+RST	59	-RST
26	+MSG	60	-MSG
27	+SEL	61	-SEL
28	+C/D	62	-C/D
29	+REQ	63	-REQ
30	+I/O	64	-I/O
31	+DB(8)	65	-DB(8)
32	+DB(9)	66	-DB(9)
33	+DB(10)	67	-DB(10)
34	+DB(11)	68	-DB(11)

Figure 19. Table of signals

NOTES: \*1 TERMPWR can be disabled.

\*2 HVD is not supported.

### 7.1.2.2 SCSI signal connector (80 pin SCA-2 model)

The 80-pin SCA-2 model uses a DDK connector which is compatible with SPI-4.

Connector contact number	Signal name	Connector contact number	Signal name
01	12 Volt Charge	41	12V Ground
02	12 Volt	42	12V Ground
03	12 Volt	43	12V Ground
04	12 Volt	44	MATED 1
05	Opt 3.3 V/NC	45	Opt 3.3 V charge/NC
06	Opt 3.3 V/NC	46	DIFFSENS(*1)
07	-DB(11)	47	+DB(11)
08	-DB(10)	48	+DB(10)
09	-DB(9)	49	+DB(9)
10	-DB(8)	50	+DB(8)
11	-I/O	51	+I/O
12	-REQ	52	+REQ
13	-C/D	53	+C/D
14	-SEL	54	+SEL
15	-MSG	55	+MSG
16	-RST	56	+RST
17	-ACK	57	+ACK
18	-BSY	58	+BSY
19	-ATN	59	+ATN
20	-P_CRCA	60	+P_CRCA
21	-DB(7)	61	+DB(7)
22	-DB(6)	62	+DB(6)
23	-DB(5)	63	+DB(5)
24	-DB(4)	64	+DB(4)
25	-DB(3)	65	+DB(3)
26	-DB(2)	66	+DB(2)
27	-DB(1)	67	+DB(1)
28	-DB(0)	68	-DB(0)
29	-DB(P1)	69	+DB(P1)
30	-DB(15)	70	+DB(15)
31	-DB(14)	71	+DB(14)
32	-DB(13)	72	+DB(13)
33	-DB(12)	73	+DB(12)
34	5 Volt	74	MATED 2
35	5 Volt	75	5V Ground
36	5 Volt Charge	76	5V Ground
37	Spindle Sync/NC	77	ACTIVE LED OUT
38	RMT START	78	DELAYED START
39	SCSI ID (0)	79	SCSI ID (1)
40	SCSI ID (2)	80	SCSI ID (3)

Figure 20. Table of signals

*NOTE\*1: HVD is not supported.*

*NOTE: SCA-2 connector is not mechanically compatible with the 68 pin "P" connector as defined in the ANSI SCSI standard. The connector is intended for direct back plane attachment and is not intended to be cable attached to the bus.*

*Eight-bit devices which connect to the SCA-2 connector should have the following signals inactive (high): -DB(8), -DB(9), -DB(10), -DB(11), -DB(12), -DB(13), -DB(14), -DB(15), -DB(P1). All other signals shall be connected as defined.*

### 7.1.3 SCSI cable

Refer to ANSI SPI-4.

### 7.1.4 SCSI bus terminator

Onboard SCSI active termination feature is not supported. The using system is responsible for making sure that all required signals are terminated at both ends of the bus cable.

#### Terminator power

Termination power can be provided by the drive 5V supply through the current limiter and Schottky diode. This function can be selected by jumper.

The 80-pin SCA-2 models do not support SCSI bus termination power.

### 7.1.5 Hot plug/unplug

The term 'Hot Plug' refers to the action of mechanically engaging a device to the power and/or bus when other devices may be active on the same bus. A comprehensive classification of the state of the SCSI bus during this event is located in the SCSI-3 Parallel Interface Standard.

While every effort was made to design the drive not to influence the SCSI bus during these events, it is the responsibility of the system to insure voltage regulation and conformance to operational and non-operational shock limits. During Hot Plug events the non-operational shock levels should not be exceeded. The operational shock levels of adjacent drives should also not be exceeded. The recommended procedure is to prohibit write operations to adjacent drives during Hot Plug and Hot Unplug actions.

During Hot Unplug the operational shock limit specifications should not be exceeded. If this cannot be guaranteed, the drive should be issued a SCSI Stop Unit command that is allowed to complete before unplugging. The basic requirement is that while the drive is operational or spinning down the operational shock limits are in effect. When the drive has completely stopped, the non-operational shock limits are in effect. The recommended procedure is to allow the unplugged drive to rest in the drive bay for a minimum of 15 seconds and then complete the removal. During Hot Plug or Unplug events the power supply ripple on adjacent operational drives should not be outside the  $\pm 5\%$  regulation tolerance. It is recommended that the system have current limiter for in-rush current as described in ANSI SPI-4.

Hot plugging/unplugging the 68-pin model drive to the power supply or to SCSI bus connector is not allowed since provisions are not available to determine which electrical contact is made first. It may cause glitches on the system SCSI bus and/or electrical over stress that may result in permanent damage of electrical components of the drive. It is the responsibility of the system to protect the drive from these situations when the 68-pin model is connected to the power supply or to SCSI bus.

### 7.1.6 SCSI bus electrical characteristics

Refer to ANSI SPI-4 for bus electrical characteristics.

*NOTE:* If the drive is connected to an HVD bus, the drive I/O will be permanently damaged.



### 7.1.7 Auxiliary connector on 68-pin model

In addition to the Option Jumper Block the 68-pin models have an Auxiliary Connector between the power connector and the 68-pin SCSI connector. The settings at the Option Jumper Block and the Auxiliary Connector work as a logical OR. The drive conforms SFF-8009, Rev 4.2.

- Pin #1,3,5,7 specify SCSI-ID as -DAS0, 1 ,2, 3. Tie-down to the ground is to assert
- Pin #2,4,6,12 are reserved and should be open
- Pin #8 is for external LED cathode

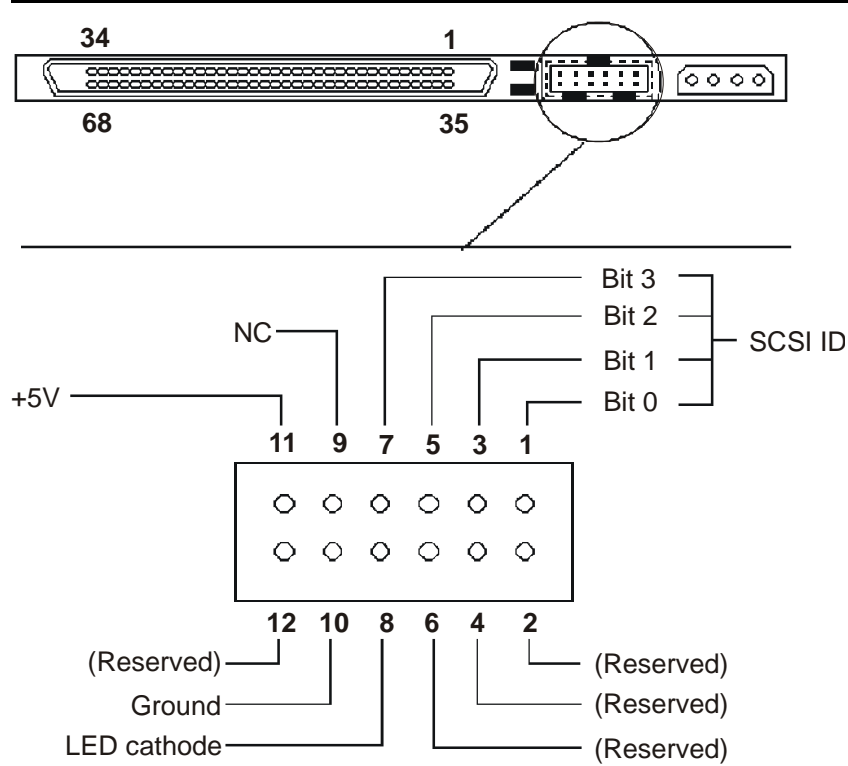


Figure 21. Auxiliary connector

## 7.2 Option jumper block

Two jumper blocks, **J4** and **J6**, are located on the card of 68- and 80-pin models as shown in the figure below.

**J4** has 14 positions numbered #1 - #14 and controls Terminator Power supply.

As described in Section 7.1.7, "Auxiliary connector on 68-pin model" on page 25, some of the jumper pins on J4 of the 68-pin models can also be controlled through the Auxiliary Connector. These controls work as logical OR between the Option Jumper Block and the Auxiliary Connector.

As described in Section 7.1.2.2, "SCSI signal connector (80-pin SCA-2 model)" on page 23 some of the jumper pins on J4 of the 80-pin models can also be controlled through the 80 pin SCA-2 connector. These controls work as a logical OR between the Option Jumper Block the SCA-2 connector.

**J6** has 14 positions numbered #1 - #14.

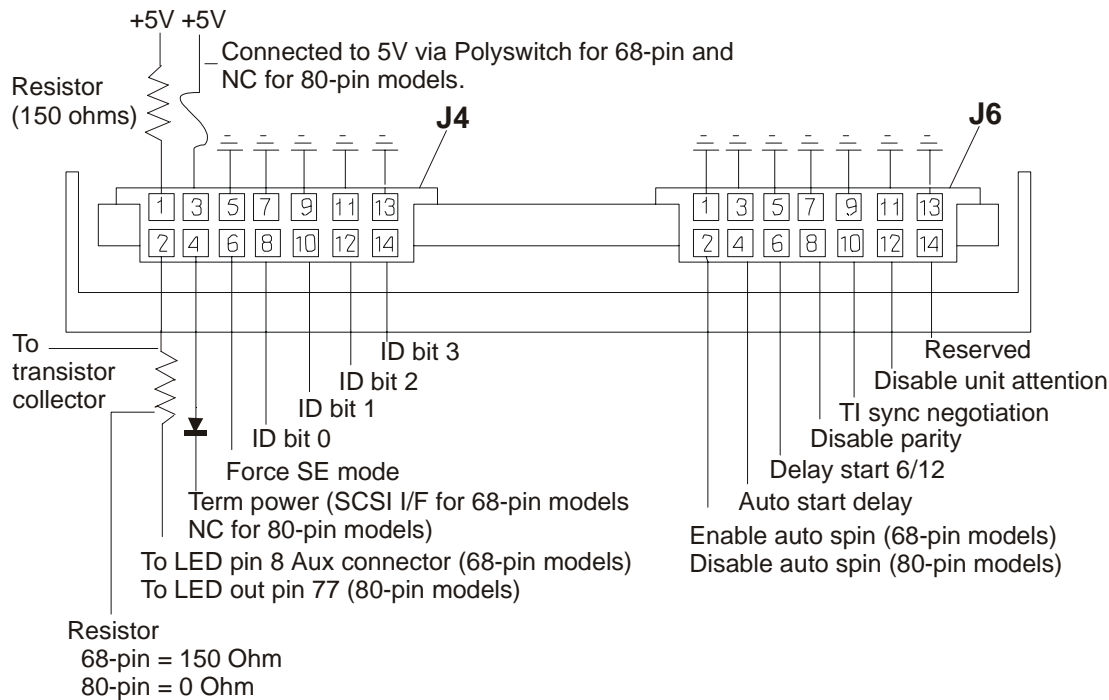


Figure 22. Jumper pins

*Note: J4 pin 3 is connected to 5V via Polyswitch for 68 pin and NC for 80 pin models.*

## 7.2.1 Jumper signal description on J6

### 7.2.1.1 Position #1-2

- **Enable Auto Spin Up (68-pin model)**

If a jumper is installed, the drive will spin up automatically after power on reset. If a jumper is not installed, the drive will not spin up unless a START UNIT command is received.

- **Disable Auto Spin Up (80-pin model)**

If a jumper is not installed, the drive will spin up automatically after power on reset. If a jumper is installed, the drive will not spin up unless a START UNIT command is received.

### 7.2.1.2 Position #3-4 and #5-6: Auto Start Delay & Delay Start 6/12

These pins control when and how the drive spins up with the combination of Position #1-2 on J6. When both Auto Spin up and Auto Start Delay are enabled, the drive start will be delayed by a period of time multiplied by its own SCSI address. If Auto Spin up is disabled, these jumpers will be ignored. Placing a jumper on delay start 6/12 results in a start up delay of 12 seconds times the SCSI ID.

*Note: In the table below, 'on' means a jumper is installed and 'off' means that a jumper is not installed.*

---

Model	Auto Start Delay	Auto Spin Up	Delay Start 6/12	Auto Start	Delay Multiplier
68 pin	off	off	off	NO	-
68 pin	off	on	off	YES	0
68 pin	on	off	off	NO	-
68 pin	on	on	off	YES	6
68 pin	off	off	on	NO	-
68 pin	off	on	on	YES	0
68 pin	on	off	on	NO	-
68 pin	on	on	on	YES	12
80 pin	off	off	off	YES	0
80 pin	off	on	off	NO	-
80 pin	on	off	off	YES	6
80 pin	on	on	off	NO	-
80 pin	off	off	on	YES	0
80 pin	off	on	on	NO	-
80 pin	on	off	on	YES	12
80 pin	on	on	on	NO	-

---

Figure 23. Auto Start Delay & Delay Start 6/12 drive behavior

### 7.2.1.3 Position #7-8: Disable SCSI Parity Check

Installing a jumper disables SCSI Parity checking.

### 7.2.1.4 Position #9-10: Enable TI-SDTR

Installing a jumper enables Target Initiated Synchronous Data Transfer Request (SDTR) and Wide Data Transfer Request (WDTR) negotiation. If this jumper is not installed, SSM (Synchronous select Mode) bit in Mode Page 0 controls Target Initiated SDTR and WDTR negotiation. If this jumper is installed, SSM bit is ignored.

### 7.2.1.5 Position #11-12: Disable Unit Attention

Installing a jumper enables control of UAI (Unit Attention Inhibit) bit in Mode Page 0.

### 7.2.1.6 Position #13-14

Reserved.

## 7.2.2 Jumper signal description on J4

### 7.2.2.1 Position #1-2: LED pins

The LED pins are used to drive an external Light Emitting Diode. Up to 30 mA of sink current capability is provided. The LED Anode must be tied to the current limited + 5 V source provided on the pin for LED Anode at the Location #1 on J4 jumper block. The LED Cathode is then connected to the pin for LED Cathode at the Location #2 on J4 jumper block to complete the circuit.

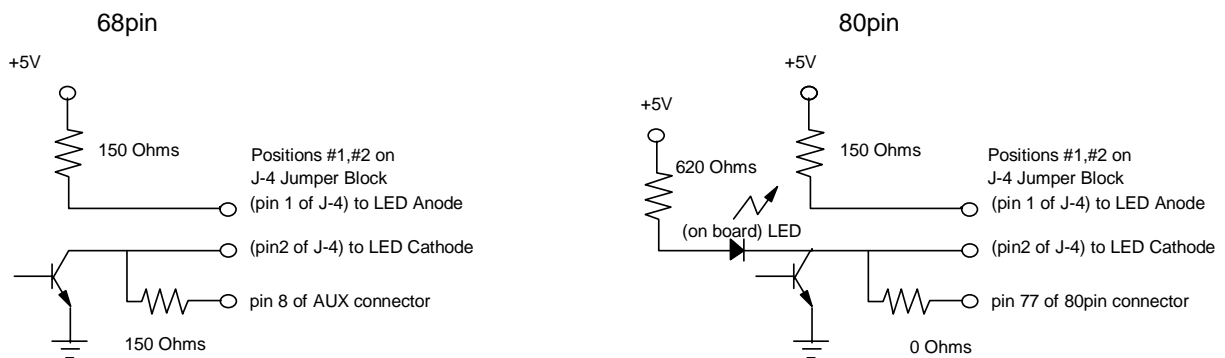


Figure 24. LED circuit

### 7.2.2.2 Position #3-4 on J4: Term Power

Not connected for 80-pin models. If a jumper is installed on 68-pin models, termination power is supplied to pins 17, 18, 51, and 52 of the 68-pin SCSI interface.

### 7.2.2.3 Position #5-6 on J4: Force SE mode

If a jumper is installed, the drive functions as a single-ended mode drive.

#### 7.2.2.4 Position #7-8 to #13-14: Device ID

These four lines (-DAS0, -DAS1, -DAS2, -DAS3) define device ID on the SCSI BUS. -DAS0 is the least significant bit and -DAS3 is the most significant bit. Device ID is defined in the table below.

In the table 'on' means a jumper is installed and 'off' means that no jumper is installed.

---

<b>-DAS3 (1)</b>	<b>-DAS2 (2)</b>	<b>-DAS1 (3)</b>	<b>-DAS0 (4)</b>	<b>Device ID</b>
off	off	off	off	0 - shipping default of 80 pin
off	off	off	on	1
off	off	on	off	2
off	off	on	on	3
off	on	off	off	4
off	on	off	on	5
off	on	on	off	6 - shipping default of 68 pin
off	on	on	on	7
on	off	off	off	8
on	off	off	on	9
on	off	on	off	10
on	off	on	on	11
on	on	off	off	12
on	on	off	on	13
on	on	on	off	14
on	on	on	on	15

---

Figure 25. SCSI device ID

## 7.3 Environment

Operating conditions	
Temperature	5 to 55°C (See note)
Relative Humidity	8 to 90%, non-condensing
Maximum Wet Bulb Temperature	29.4°C, non-condensing
Maximum Temperature Gradient	15°C/Hour
Altitude	-300 to 3048 m
Non-operating conditions	
Temperature	-40 to 65°C
Relative Humidity	5 to 95%, non-condensing
Maximum Wet Bulb Temperature	35°C, non-condensing
Maximum Temperature Gradient	15°C/Hour
Altitude	-300 to 12,000 m

Figure 26. Operating and non-operating conditions

*NOTE: The system must provide sufficient ventilation to maintain a surface temperature not to exceed 60 °C at the center of the drive top cover. Non-condensing conditions should be maintained at all times. Maximum storage period within shipping package is one year.*

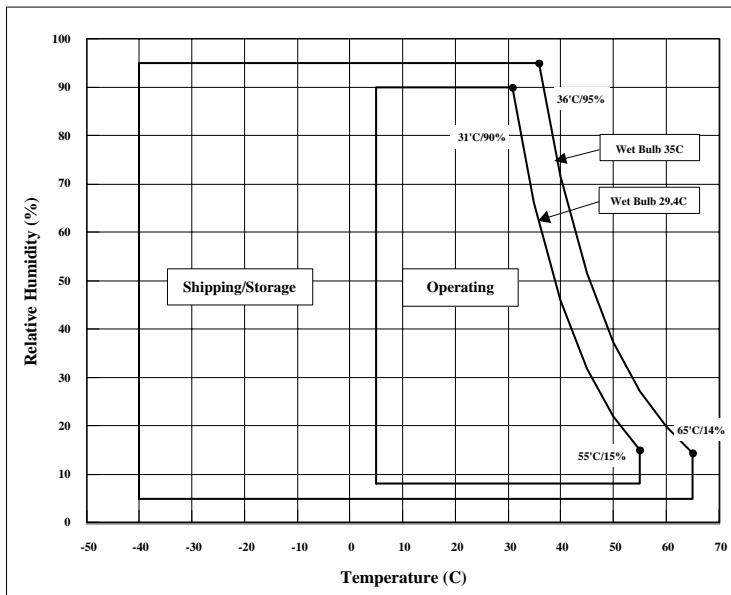


Figure 27. Temperature and relative humidity

### 7.3.1 Corrosion test

The hard disk drive shows no signs of corrosion inside or outside of the hard disk assembly and remains functional after being exposed to a temperature of 50°C and relative humidity of 90% for seven days.

---

## 7.4 Cooling requirements

Drive component temperatures must remain within the limits specified in the following table. Maximum component temperature ratings must not be exceeded under any operating condition. The drive may require forced air cooling to meet specified operating temperatures.

---

Module name	Location	Maximum allowable surface temperature
MPU + HDC integration module	1	95°C
DRAM	2	95°C
VCM + Spindle Driver	3	95°C
Channel module	4	95°C

---

Figure 28. Maximum allowable module surface temperature

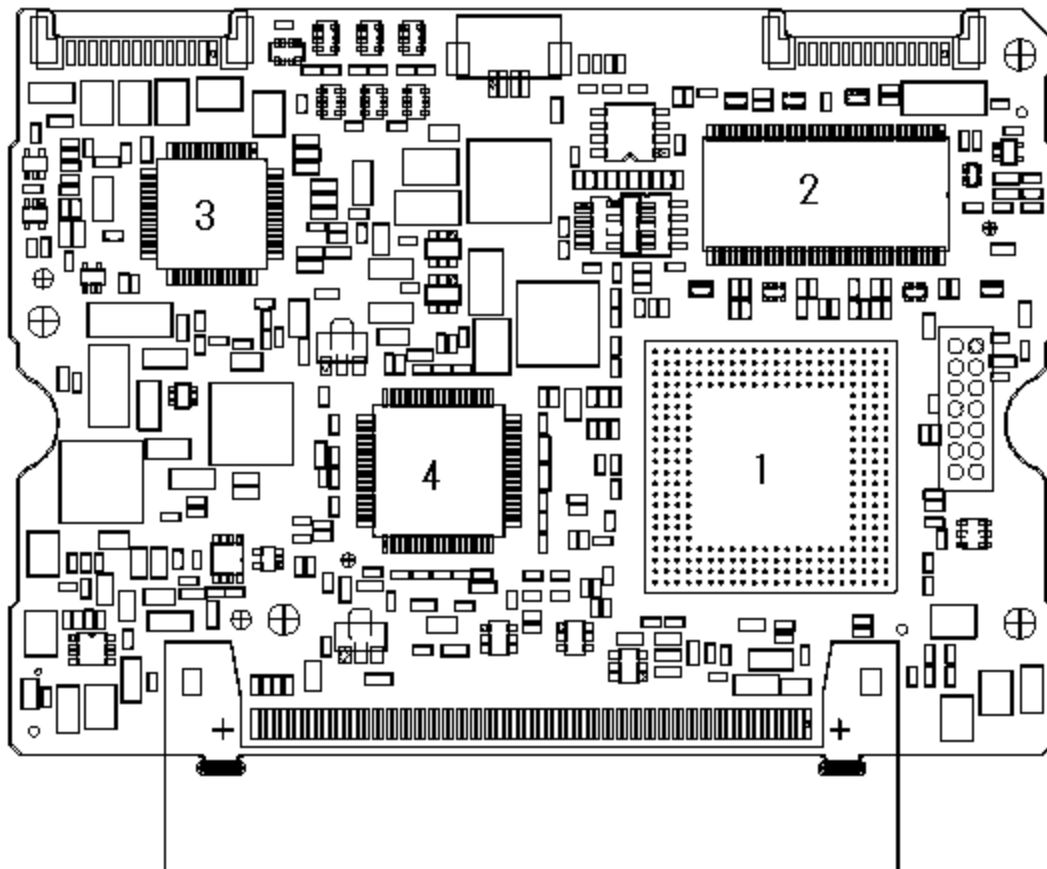


Figure 29. Module location

## 7.5 DC power requirements

The following voltage specification applies at the drive power connector. Connections to the drive should be made in a safety extra low voltage (SELV) circuit. There is no special power on/off sequencing required.

Adequate secondary over-current protection is the responsibility of the system. A limit of 10 A is required for safety purposes.

### 7.5.1 Input voltage

	During run and spin up	Absolute max spike voltage	Supply rise time
+5 volts supply	5 V $\pm$ 5%	5.5 V	0-200 ms
+12 volts supply	12 V $\pm$ 5% *	15 V	0-400 ms

Figure 30. Input voltage

\* NOTE: –8% is acceptable during spin up, but the spin up time is not guaranteed.

**CAUTION: To avoid damage to the drive electronics, power supply voltage spikes must not exceed 5.5 V.**

### 7.5.2 Power supply current

Note: Seek power is at 50 IOPS and R/W power is at 30 IOPS with 4 KB R/W.

146-GB models (All values in Amps.)	+5 Volts Pop Mean	+5 Volts Std. Dev	+12 Volts Pop Mean	+12 Volts Std. Dev	Total (W)
Idle Average	0.50	0.02	0.64	0.03	10.2
Idle ripple (peak-to-peak)	0.22	0.02	0.42	0.10	n/a
Seek average	0.55	0.02	1.10	0.03	16.0
Seek peak	0.91	0.05	2.40	0.10	n/a
Start up (max)	1.07	0.03	2.40	0.13	n/a
Random R/W peak	1.40	0.10	2.40	0.10	n/a
Random R/W average	0.66	0.02	0.97	0.03	14.9

Figure 31. Power supply current of 146-GB models

73-GB models (All values in Amps.)	+5 Volts Pop Mean	+5 Volts Std. Dev	+12 Volts Pop Mean	+12 Volts Std. Dev	Total (W)
Idle Average	0.50	0.02	0.43	0.03	7.7
Idle ripple (peak-to-peak)	0.22	0.02	0.40	0.10	n/a
Seek average	0.55	0.02	0.92	0.03	13.8
Seek peak	0.91	0.05	2.23	0.10	n/a
Start up (max)	1.07	0.03	2.23	0.13	n/a
Random R/W peak	1.40	0.10	2.23	0.10	n/a
Random R/W average	0.66	0.02	0.79	0.03	12.8

Figure 32. Power supply current of 73-GB models



<b>36-GB models</b> (All values in Amps.)	<b>+5 Volts Pop Mean</b>	<b>+5 Volts Std. Dev</b>	<b>+12 Volts Pop Mean</b>	<b>+12 Volts Std. Dev</b>	<b>Total (W)</b>
Idle Average	0.50	0.02	0.37	0.03	7.0
Idle ripple (peak-to-peak)	0.22	0.02	0.40	0.10	n/a
Seek average	0.55	0.02	0.86	0.03	13.1
Seek peak	0.91	0.05	2.12	0.10	n/a
Start up (max)	1.07	0.03	2.12	0.13	n/a
Random R/W peak	1.40	0.10	2.12	0.10	n/a
Random R/W average	0.66	0.02	0.73	0.03	12.1

Figure 32. Power supply current of 36-GB models

<b>18-GB models</b> (All values in Amps.)	<b>+5 Volts Pop Mean</b>	<b>+5 Volts Std. Dev</b>	<b>+12 Volts Pop Mean</b>	<b>+12 Volts Std. Dev</b>	<b>Total (W)</b>
Idle Average	0.50	0.02	0.28	0.03	5.9
Idle ripple (peak-to-peak)	0.22	0.02	0.40	0.10	n/a
Seek average	0.55	0.02	0.77	0.03	12.0
Seek peak	0.91	0.05	1.96	0.10	n/a
Start up (max)	1.07	0.03	1.98	0.13	n/a
Random R/W peak	1.40	0.10	1.98	0.10	n/a
Random R/W average	0.66	0.02	0.64	0.03	11.1

Figure 33. Power supply current of 18-GB models

### 7.5.3 Ripple voltage

	<b>Maximum (mV pp)</b>	<b>MHz</b>
+5V DC	250	0-10
+12V DC	250	0-10

Figure 34. Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector

During drive start up and seeking 12-volt ripple is generated by the drive (referred to as dynamic loading). If the power of several drives is daisy-chained, the power supply ripple plus other drive dynamic loading must remain within the regulation tolerance of  $\pm 5\%$ . A common supply with separate power leads to each drive is a more desirable method of power distribution.

To prevent external electrical noise from interfering with the drive's performance, the drive must be held by four screws in a user system frame which has no electrical level difference at the four screws position, and has less than  $\pm 300$  millivolts peak to peak level difference to the drive power connector ground.

### 7.5.4 Power consumption efficiency index

	<b>146-GB Model</b>	<b>73-GB Model</b>	<b>36-GB Model</b>	<b>18-GB Model</b>
Power consumption efficiency index- idle mode (W/GB)	0.07	0.11	0.19	0.33

Figure 35. Power consumption efficiency index

---

## 7.6 Reliability

### 7.6.1 Start/stop cycles

The drive is designed to withstand a minimum of 50,000 start/stop cycles at ambient environment.

The drive is designed to withstand a minimum of 10,000 start/stop cycles at operating environment conditions specified on page 30.

### 7.6.2 Data reliability

The probability of uncorrectable data error rate is 10 in  $1 \times 10^{16}$  bits read.

The following ECC on the fly correction is implemented:

- 1 Symbol : 8 bits
- 3 Interleave
- 15 Symbols, 5 symbols per each interleave, for on the fly correction. This implementation always recovers 5 random burst errors and a 113 bit continuous burst error.

### 7.6.3 Seek/ID miscompare errors

A non-recoverable seek/ID miscompare error is defined as a seek operation that cannot be recovered by the error recovery procedure of the drive. The drive reports sense key 04 and sense code 02 for this error.

No drive has more than one non-recoverable seek/ID miscompare error per 100 million seek operations (1 in  $1 \times 10^8$ ) when operated at the full range of voltage and environmental conditions.

### 7.6.4 Equipment errors

A recoverable equipment error is any error other than a seek/ID mis-compare error or read error that is detected and corrected by the drive error recovery procedure. Examples are Write Fault, Drive Not Ready and internal drive errors.

No drive has more than one recoverable equipment error per  $10^8$  read,  $10^8$  write or  $10^6$  seek operations when operated at the full range of voltage and environmental conditions.

Non-recoverable equipment errors indicate a defective drive.

### 7.6.5 Failure prediction (PFA/S.M.A.R.T.)

The drive supports Informational Exceptions Control Page (1C) defined in the SCSI-3 Parallel Interface Standard. The function enables the drive to report sense codes of FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED to the host system. The Mode page 1C specifies enable/disable, reporting method, and report count.

If the drive exceeds the failure prediction threshold, the drive returns Check Condition on any command. Per the specified reporting method in Mode Page 1C, 0/5D/00, 1/5D/00, or 6/5D/00 as sense key/code/qualifier is then sent to the host as a response of Request Sense command.

As the default the function is enabled but no reporting of informational exception condition is made.

The details are described in Section 8.8.13, "Mode Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)" on page 111.

### 7.6.6 Preventive maintenance

None.

### **7.6.7 Temperature Warning**

Temperature Warning is enabled by setting EWASC (Enable Warning Additional Sense Code) bit to 1 and setting DEXCPT (Disable Exception Control) bit to 0 in Mode Page 1C. For the mode page setting refer to Section 8.8.13, "Mode Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)" on page 111. The warning is issued as sense data (Sense Key 01h, Code 0Bh, Qual 01h).

The drive temperature can be detected by Log Sense Page 2F. Refer to Section 8.7.11 on page 79.

---

## 7.7 Mechanical specifications

### 7.7.1 Outline

#### 7.7.1.1 68-pin model

---

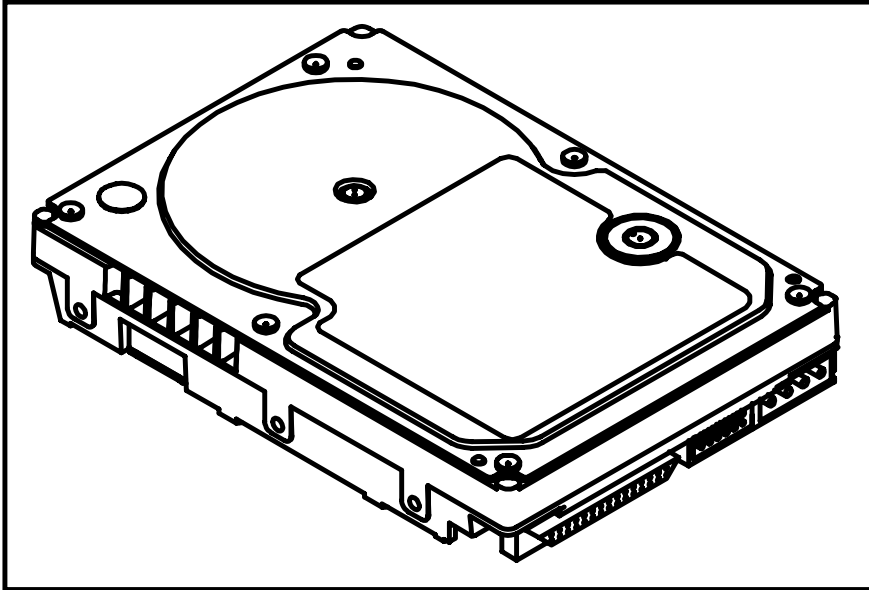


Figure 36. Outline of the 68-pin model

#### 7.7.1.2 80-pin model

---

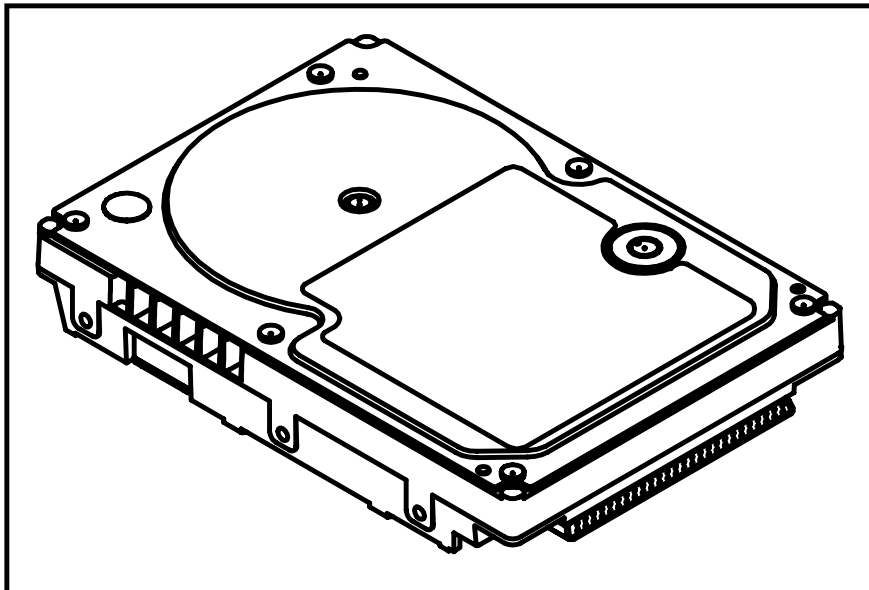


Figure 37. Outline of the 80-pin model

## 7.7.2 Mechanical dimensions

The drive complies with SFF-8301 with the exception of tolerance of width which is  $\pm 0.4$  mm rather than  $\pm 0.25$  mm.

Height [mm]	$25.4 \pm 0.4$
Width [mm]	$101.6 \pm 0.4$
Length [mm]	$146.0 \pm 0.6$
Weight [grams - maximum]	780

Figure 39. Physical dimensions

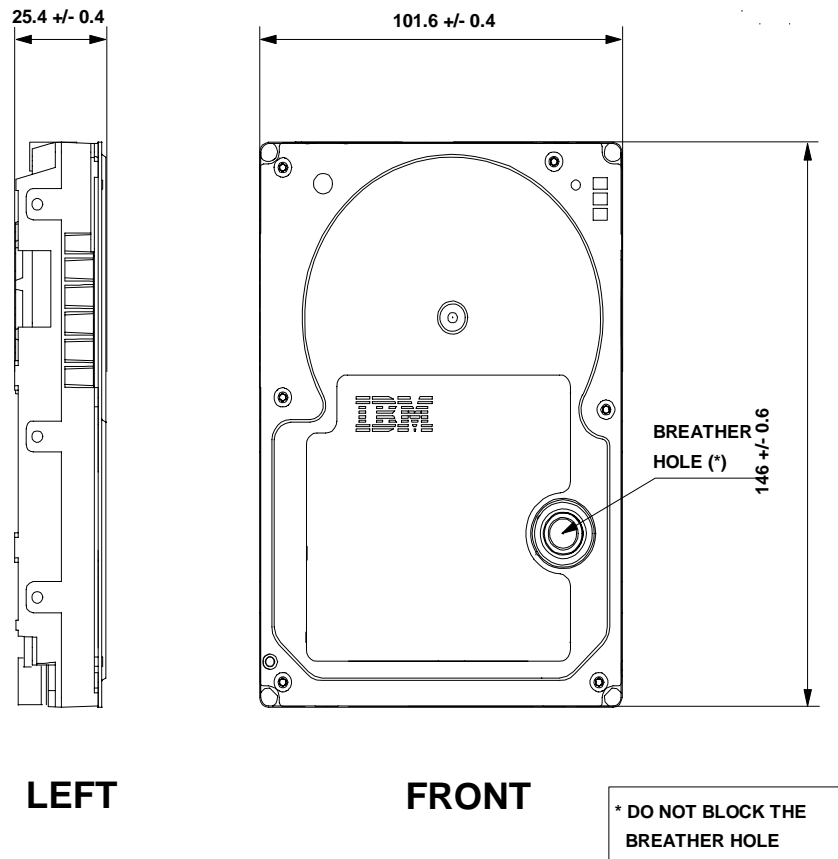


Figure 40. Mechanical dimensions

## 7.7.3 Interface connector

### 7.7.3.1 68-pin model

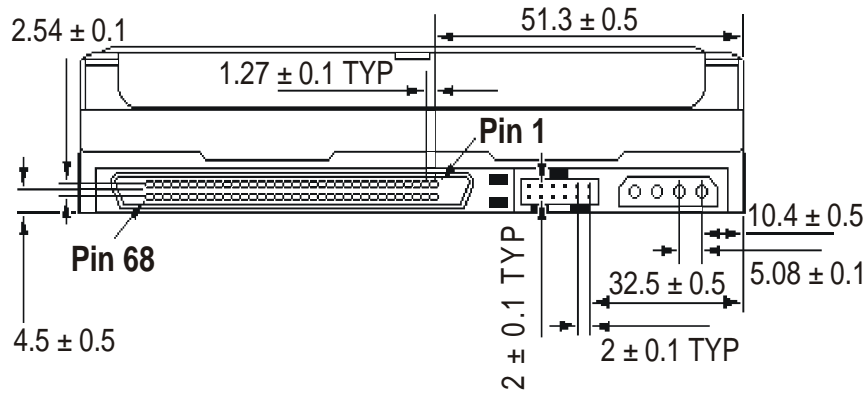


Figure 40. Interface connector for 68-pin models

### 7.7.3.2 80-pin model

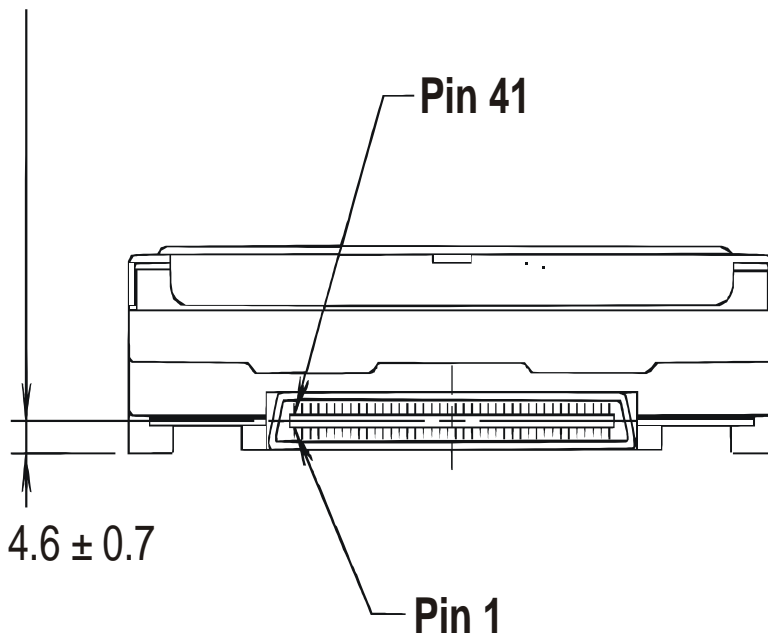


Figure 41. Interface connector for 80-pin models

## 7.7.4 Mounting positions and tappings

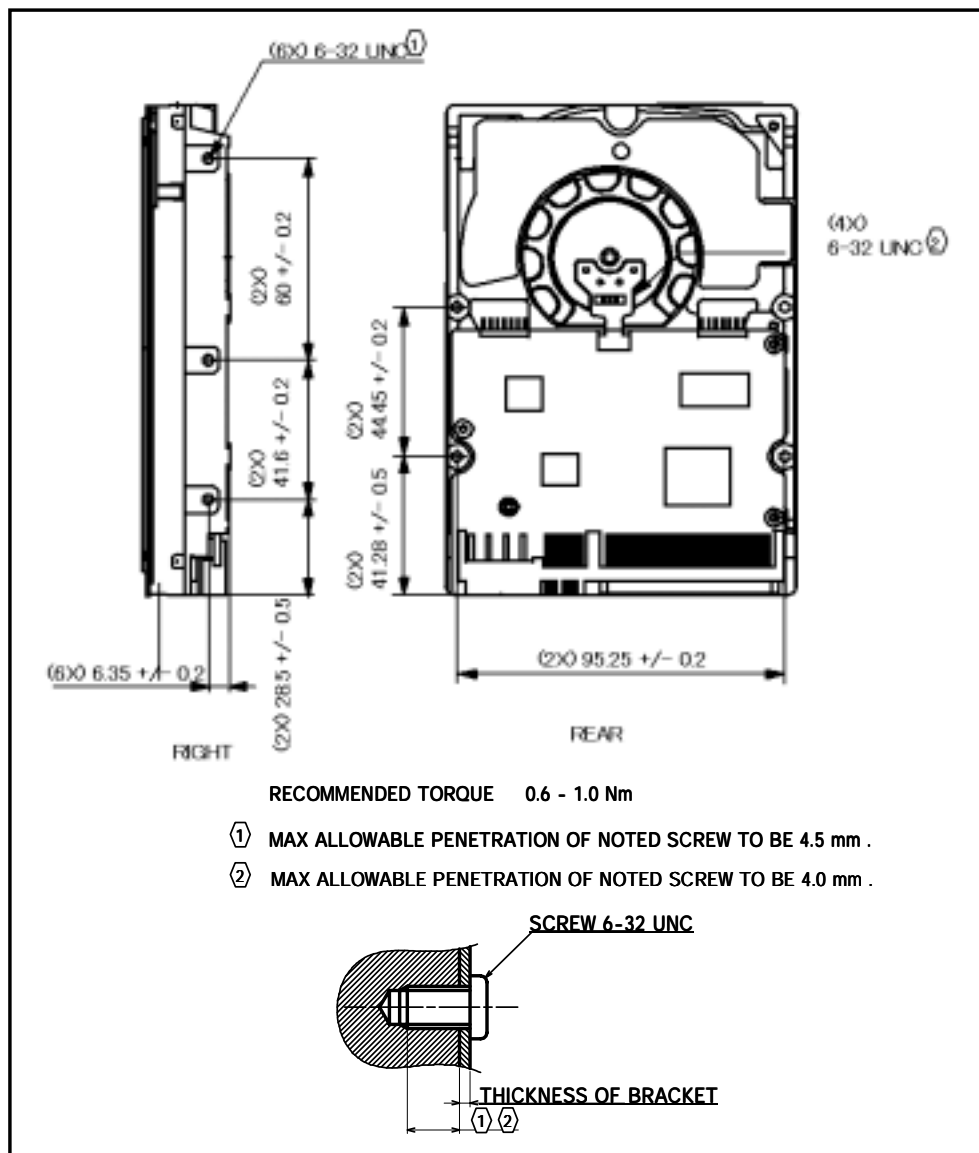


Figure 42. Mounting positions and tappings

### Drive mounting

The drive will operate in all axes (six directions). Performance and error rate will stay within specification limits if the drive is operated in the other orientations from which it was formatted.

The recommended mounting screw torque is 0.6 – 1.0 Nm (6 – 10 Kgf.cm). The recommended mounting screw depth is 4 mm maximum for bottom and 4.5 mm maximum for horizontal mounting.

To avoid performance degradation, mount the drive in the system securely enough to prevent excessive motion or vibration of the drive at seek operation or spindle rotation, using appropriate screws or equivalent mounting hardware. Consult with the issuer of this specification for actual application if necessary.

Drive level vibration test and shock test are to be conducted with the drive mounted to the table using the bottom four screws.

### 7.7.5 Heads unload and actuator lock

Heads are moved out from disks (unload) to protect the disk data during shipping, moving or storage. At power down, the heads are automatically unloaded from the disk area and the head actuator locking mechanism will secure the heads in the unload position.

### 7.7.6 Breather hole

The breather hole must be kept clear and unobstructed at all times. *Do not cover the breather hole.*

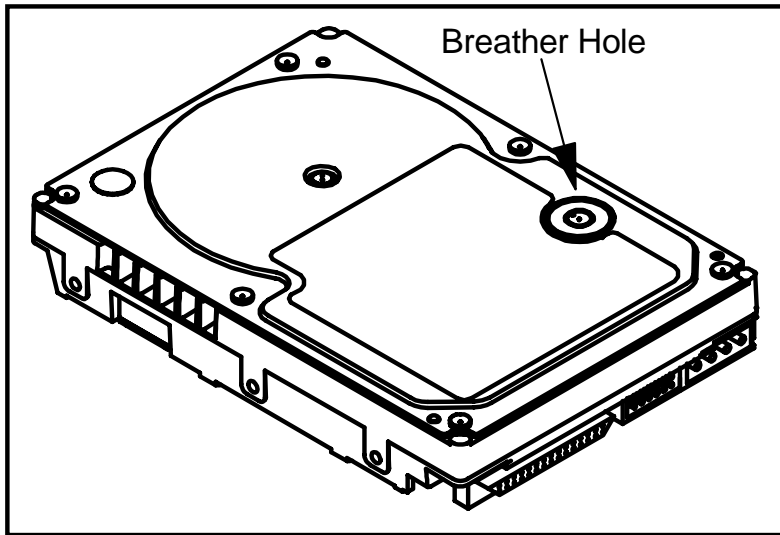


Figure 43. Breather hole location

---



## 7.8 Vibration and shock

All vibration and shock measurements in this section are made with a drive that has no mounting attachments for the systems. The input power for the measurements is applied to the normal drive mounting points.

### 7.8.1 Operating vibration

#### 7.8.1.1 Random vibration

The drive is designed to operate without unrecoverable errors while being subjected to the following vibration levels.

The measurements are carried out during 30 minutes of random vibration using the power spectral density (PSD) levels as following.

#### Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (operating)

Direction	5 Hz	17 Hz	45 Hz	48 Hz	62 Hz	65 Hz	150 Hz	200 Hz	500 Hz	RMS (G)
Horizontal $\times 10^3$ [G <sup>2</sup> /Hz]	0.02	1.1	1.1	8.0	8.0	1.0	1.0	0.5	0.5	0.67
Vertical $\times 10^3$ [G <sup>2</sup> /Hz]	0.02	1.1	1.1	8.0	8.0	1.0	1.0	0.08	0.08	0.56

Figure 44. Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (operating)

Overall RMS (root mean square) level of horizontal vibration is 0.67 G RMS.

Overall RMS (root mean square) level of vertical vibration is 0.56 G RMS.

*NOTE: The specified levels are measured at the mounting points.*

#### 7.8.1.2 Swept sine vibration

The hard disk drive will meet the criteria shown below while operating in respective conditions.

**No errors** 0.5 G 0-peak, 5-300-5 Hz sine wave, 0.5 oct/min sweep rate

**No data loss** 1 G 0-peak, 5-300-5 Hz sine wave, 0.5 oct/min sweep rate

### 7.8.2 Non-operating vibrations

The drive does not sustain permanent damage or loss of recorded data after being subjected to the environment described below.

#### 7.8.2.1 Random vibration

The test consists of a random vibration applied for each of three mutually perpendicular axes with the time duration of 10 minutes per axis. The PSD levels for the test simulates the shipping and relocation environment which is shown below.

#### Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (non-operating)

Frequency	2 Hz	4 Hz	8 Hz	40 Hz	55 Hz	70 Hz	200 Hz	RMS (G)
[G <sup>2</sup> /Hz]	0.001	0.03	0.03	0.003	0.01	0.01	0.001	1.04

Figure 45. Random vibration PSD profile breakpoints (non-operating)

Overall RMS (Root Mean Square) level of vibration is 1.04G (RMS).

The disk drive does not sustain permanent hardware damage or loss of previously recorded data after being subjected to the environment described above.

### **7.8.2.2 Swept sine vibration**

- 2 G (Zero to peak), 5 to 500 to 5 Hz sine wave
- 0.5 oct/min sweep rate

### **7.8.3 Operating shock**

The drive meets the following criteria:

- No data loss with 10G, 11 ms half-sine shock pulse
- No data loss with 45G, 2 ms half-sine shock pulse

The shock pulses of each level are applied to the drive, ten pulses for each direction and for all three axes. There must be a minimum of 30 seconds delay between shock pulses. The input level is applied to a base plate where the drive is attached with four screws.

### **7.8.4 Non-operating shock**

The drive withstands the following square shock pulse with no permanent damage:

- Accelerating level of 50 G
- Duration time of 11 ms
- Rise and fall time of 1 ms
- Minimum velocity change of 4.23 ms

The drive withstands the following half-sine shock pulse:

- No data loss with 75G, 11 ms
- No data loss with 225G, 2 ms (146-GB model)
- No data loss with 300G, 2 ms (all other models)

The shocks are applied in each direction of the drive for three mutually perpendicular axes and one axis at a time. Input levels are measured on a base plate where the drive is attached with four screws.

The drive withstands the following Rotational Shock:

- No data loss with Rotational Shock  $30000\text{rad/s}^2$ , 1 ms applied around the axis of actuator pivot.

*NOTE: Actuator is automatically locked at power-off to keep the heads on a landing zone.*

---

## 7.9 Acoustics

The upper limit criteria of the A-weighted sound power levels are given in Bel relative to one pico watt and are shown in the following table. The measurement method is in accordance with ISO7779. Drives are to meet this criteria in both board up and board down orientations.

---

Model	Mode	A-weighted sound power level (Bel)	
		Typical	Maximum
146 GB	Idle	3.7	4.1
	Operating	4.5	4.8
all other models	Idle	3.4	3.8
	Operating	4.5	4.8

---

Figure 46. A-weighted sound power levels

Background power levels of the acoustic test chamber for each octave band are to be recorded. Sound power levels are measured with the drive supported by spacers so that the lower surface of the drive is located  $25 \pm 3$ mm height from the chamber desk. No sound absorbing material shall be used. The acoustical characteristics of the drive subsystem are measured under the following conditions.

**Idle mode:**

Powered on, disks spinning, track following, unit ready to receive and respond to control line commands except approximately once per minute when the idle time function sweeps the disk surface.

**Operating mode:**

Continuous random cylinder selection and seek operation of the actuator with a dwell time at each cylinder. Seek rate for the drive is calculated per the formula below:

$$Ns = 0.4 / (Tt + Tl)$$

Ns = average seek rate in seeks/sec.

Tt = published random seek time.

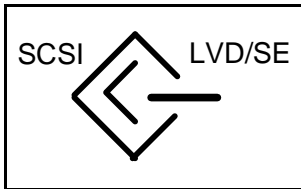
Tl = time for the drive to rotate by half a revolution.

---

## 7.10 Identification labels

The following labels are affixed to every hard disk drive shipped from the drive manufacturing location in accordance with appropriate hard disk drive assembly drawing:

- A label containing IBM logo, IBM part number and the statement “Made by IBM Japan Ltd.”, or IBM approved equivalent
- A label containing drive model number, manufacturing date, formatted capacity, country of origin or IBM approved equivalent and UL, CSA, TUV, CE, and C-Tick logos
- A bar code label containing the drive serial number
- Jumper setting label
- A user designed label, per agreement
- Interface definition mark, SCSI LVD/SE multimode



---

Figure 47. Interface definition mark, SCSI LVD/SE multimode

The labels may be integrated with other labels

---

## 7.11 Electromagnetic compatibility

The drive, when installed in a suitable enclosure and exercised with a random accessing routine at maximum data rate, meets the worldwide EMC requirements listed below.

IBM will provide technical support to meet the requirements to comply with the EMC specifications.

- United States Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and Regulations (Class B), Part 15
- IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-005
- CISPR Publication 22; 1997 (Class B)
- Electrostatic Discharge Susceptibility limits for a Class 2 ESD environment specified in IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-034
- Radiated Electromagnetic Susceptibility (RES) as specified in IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-037

### 7.11.1 CE Mark

The drive is declared to be in conformity with requirements of the following EC directives under the sole responsibility of IBM United Kingdom Ltd. or Yamato Lab, IBM Japan Ltd.

Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility.

### 7.11.2 C-Tick Mark

The drive complies with the following Australian EMC standard.

- Limits and methods of measurement of radio disturbance characteristics of information technology equipment, AS/NZS 3548:1995 Class B.

### 7.11.3 BSMI Mark

The drive complies with the following Taiwan EMC standard.

- Limits and methods of measurement of radio disturbance characteristics of information technology equipment, CNS 13438 Class B.

---

## 7.12 Safety

The following shows the safety standards for different countries.

### 7.12.1 UL and CSA standard conformity

The drive is qualified per UL1950 third edition and CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 950-95 third edition, for the use in Information Technology Equipment, including Electric Business Equipment. The UL recognition, or the CSA certification, is maintained for the product life. The UL and C-UL recognition mark, or CSA monogram for CSA certification, appears on the drive.

### 7.12.2 European Standards Compliance

The drive is certified for compliance to EN60950 and conforms with these requirements for the life of the product.

### 7.12.3 German Safety Mark

All Ultrastar 146Z10 models are to be approved by TUV on Test requirement: EN 60950, but the GS mark is not applicable to internal devices such as these drives.

### 7.12.4 Flammability

The printed circuit boards used in this drive are made of material with the UL recognized flammability rating of V-1 or better. The flammability rating is marked or etched on the board. All other parts not considered electrical components are made of material with the UL recognized flammability rating of V-1 or better. However, small mechanical parts such as cable ties, washers, screws, and PC board mounts may be made of material with a UL recognized flammability rating of V-2.

---

## Part 2. Interface specification

This page intentionally left blank.



## 8.0 SCSI Command Set

Summaries of the SCSI commands supported by the drive are listed below.

O = optional, M = mandatory.

Type	Code	Description
M	04h	FORMAT UNIT
M	12h	INQUIRY
O	4Ch	LOG SELECT
O	4Dh	LOG SENSE
O	15h	MODE SELECT (6)
O	55h	MODE SELECT (10)
O	1Ah	MODE SENSE (6)
O	5Ah	MODE SENSE (10)
O	5Eh	PERSISTENT RESERVE IN
O	5Fh	PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT
O	34h	PRE-FETCH
M	08h	READ (6)
M	28h	READ (10)
O	3Ch	READ BUFFER
M	25h	READ CAPACITY
O	37h	READ DEFECT DATA (10)
O	B7h	READ DEFECT DATA (12)
O	3Eh	READ LONG
O	07h	REASSIGN BLOCKS
O	1Ch	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS
M	17h	RELEASE (6)
O	57h	RELEASE (10)
O	A3h	REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER
O	A0h	REPORT LUN
M	03h	REQUEST SENSE
M	16h	RESERVE (6)
O	56h	RESERVE (10)
O	01h	REZERO UNIT
O	0Bh	SEEK (6)
O	2Bh	SEEK (10)
M	1Dh	SEND DIAGNOSTIC
O	1Bh	START/STOP UNIT
O	35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE
M	00h	TEST UNIT READY
O	2Fh	VERIFY
M	0Ah	WRITE (6)
M	2Ah	WRITE (10)
O	2Eh	WRITE AND VERIFY
O	3Bh	WRITE BUFFER
O	3Fh	WRITE LONG
O	41h	WRITE SAME

Figure 48. Supported SCSI commands

Note: When it is not necessary to differentiate commands with different length such as READ (6) and READ (10), a simpler form of READ will be used for both commands.

---

## 8.1 SCSI Control Byte

The Control Byte is the last byte of every CDB. The format of this byte is shown below.

---

Bit								
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
VU = 0		Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 49. SCSI Control Byte

**VU** VU stands for Vendor Unique.

**FLAG** The Flag bit specifies which message the drive shall return to the initiator if the link bit is one and the command completes without any error. If Link is zero, Flag must also be zero. If Link is one and the command terminates successfully, the drive will send either the LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message (FLAG=0) or the LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE WITH FLAG message (FLAG=1). Typically this bit is used to cause an interrupt in the initiator between linked commands.

**LINK** This bit is set to one to indicate that the initiator desires an automatic link to the next command upon successful completion of the current command. Upon successful completion of the command, the drive will return INTERMEDIATE GOOD status and then send one of the two messages defined under Flag above.

Upon unsuccessful completion of the command, the drive will return CHECK CONDITION status or RESERVATION CONFLICT status and then send the COMMAND COMPLETE message. No further commands in the chain are executed.

---

## 8.2 Abbreviations

These abbreviations are used throughout the following sections:

<b>CDB</b>	Command descriptor block
<b>LBA</b>	Logical Block Address
<b>LSB</b>	Least significant bit
<b>LUN</b>	Logical Unit Number. An encoded three-bit identifier for the logical unit
<b>MSB</b>	Most significant bit
<b>RSVD</b>	Reserved
<b>VU</b>	Vendor unique bits

---

## 8.3 Byte ordering conventions

In this specification, where it is not explicitly stated, all multibyte values are stored with the most significant byte first. For example, in a 4-byte field byte 0 will contain the MSB and byte 3 the LSB.

## 8.4 FORMAT UNIT (04h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 04h							
1	Reserved			FmtData	CmpList	Defect List Format		
2	VU = 0							
3 4	(MSB) Interleave Factor							(LSB)
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 50. FORMAT UNIT (04h)

The FORMAT UNIT command performs a physical formatting of the drive media. This includes handling defective sectors and overwriting all data areas with a constant data pattern. (Reserved areas of the media are not affected by the FORMAT UNIT command.)

- **FmtData** set to one specifies that a Data Out phase follows the Command phase. FmtData set to zero specifies that no Data Out phase follows.
- **CmpList** set to one specifies that the G-List (Grown Defect List) existing prior to the format **not** be used and is discarded. The drive is formatted with P-List and D-List (if specified). D-List becomes the new G-List.

**Note:** The drive manages two internal defect lists and one external. The primary defect list ("P"List) is created at time of manufacture. The grown defect list (G-List) is built after manufacture by the Initiators use of the REASSIGN BLOCK command and the Automatic Reallocate functions. The data defect list (D-List) is an external list. It is supplied by the initiator in the DATA OUT phase of the FORMAT UNIT command.

- **Defect List Format** specifies the format of the defect descriptor transferred to the drive when FmtData bit is set to one. The drive supports three defect descriptor formats for the Format Unit command as following:

### Format Description

- 000b** Block format
- 100b** Bytes From Index format
- 101b** Physical Sector format

If the FmtData bit is set to zero, this field must also be zero. Otherwise the command will complete with a CHECK CONDITION with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an additional sense code of INVALID FIELD in CDB.

- **Interleave Factor** may be zero or one, either of which specifies an interleave of 1:1. Other Interleave Factors are ignored because of the extensive buffering implemented in the drive.

## 8.4.1 Defect list

Following is the format of the Defect List Header sent during the DATA OUT phase when FmtData is set to one.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved = 0							
1	FOV	DPRY	DCRT	STPF=1	IP = 0	DSP= 0	Immed	0
2 3	(MSB) Defect List Length							(LSB)

Figure 51. Format of Defect List Header

The drive has a limited implementation of the Format Option bits located in Bits 2 through 7 of Byte 1 of the Defect List Header (See Figure 48). If the initiator attempts to select any function not implemented by the drive, the drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION Status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code is set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

- **FOV** (Format Options Valid) bit of zero causes the drive to verify that the setting for the DPRY (Disable Primary), DCRT (Disable Certification), STPF (Stop Format), IP (Initialize Pattern), and DSP (Disable Saving Parameters) bits are zero. If any of these bits are not zero, the drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION Status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code is set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

**Note:** When FOV bit is one, three combinations of the DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP and DSP bits are allowed. Any other combinations return a Check Condition Status With a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER List. The supported combination is

```
DPRY=0   DCRT=1   STPF=1   IP=0   DSP=0
DPRY=1   DCRT=1   STPF=1   IP=0   DSP=0
DPRY=0   DCRT=0   STPF=1   IP=0   DSP=0
```

- **DPRY** (Disable Primary) bit set to zero indicates that the drive does not use portions of the medium identified as defective in the primary defect P-LIST for Initiator addressable logical blocks. If the drive cannot locate the P-List or it cannot determine whether a P-List exists, the drive terminates the FORMAT UNIT command as described for STPF=1. A DPRY bit of one indicates that the drive does not use the P-list to identify defective areas of the medium. The P-list is not deleted.
- **DCRT** (Disable Certification) bit of ZERO indicates that the drive performs a medium certification operation and generates a Certification List (CList) and the drive adds the CList to the G-List. A DCRT bit of one indicates that the drive does not generate a CList (Certification List) nor perform a certification process while executing the FORMAT UNIT Command.

**Note:** Since the DCRT bit is part of the DATA OUT phase that follows the format command, the FCERT bit in Mode Page 0 is provided to control certification when the format command is issued with no DATA OUT phase. If a format command is issued with a DATA OUT phase then FCERT is ignored.

- **STPF** (Stop Format) bit must be set to one. If one or both of the following conditions occurs, the drive terminates the Format Unit command with CHECK CONDITION Status. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR and the additional sense code is set to either DEFECT LIST NOT FOUND if the first condition occurred or it is set to DEFECT LIST ERROR if the second condition occurred.

1. The drive cannot locate a required defect list nor determine that the list exists.
  2. The drive encounters an unrecoverable error while accessing a required defect list.
- **IP** (Initialization Pattern) bit must be set to zero. The drive initializes all data with zeros.
  - **DSP** (Disable Saving Parameters) bit must be set to zero. The drive saves all the MODE SELECT savable parameters during the format operation.
  - **Immed** (Immediate) bit set to zero requests that status be returned at the end of the format operation. An immediate bit set to one requests that status be returned immediately. GOOD Status is returned following the CDB validation and transfer of data in the DATA OUT phase. If the immediate format operation terminates in error, Deferred Error Sense data is generated. With the immediate bit set to one, the Link bit must be set to zero.

## 8.4.2 Defect descriptor

The Defect List Length field specifies the total length in bytes of the defect descriptors that follow. The drive has an implementation limitation for the number of defect descriptors. The number of defect descriptors shall be less than 128. The defect list length must be equal to four times the number of defect descriptors to follow for the BLOCK format or eight times the number of defect descriptors to follow for the BYTES FROM INDEX and PHYSICAL SECTOR format. Otherwise the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION STATUS, the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and the additional sense code is set to INVALID FIELD In PARAMETER LIST. The defect descriptors must specify the defect based on the current Format Device parameters reported by the MODE SENSE command.

The drive supports three Defect List formats.

### 8.4.2.1 Block format

The Block format of the defect list supported by the drive is by logical block where the location of defective sectors is given by their LBA.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Defective Logical Block Address							
1								
2								
3								
4n - 4n +3	Defective Logical Block Address n							

Figure 52. Defect descriptor - Block format.

Format of the defect list sent during the DATA OUT phase when FmtData set to one.

### 8.4.2.2 Bytes From Index format

Each defect descriptor for the Bytes From Index format specifies that the sector containing this byte be marked defective. The defect descriptor is comprised of the cylinder number of the defect, the head number of the defect, and the defect bytes from index.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 1 2	(MSB) Cylinder Number of Defect							(LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect							
4 5 6 7	(MSB) Defect Bytes from Index							(LSB)
8n - 8n + 7	Defect Descriptor n							

Figure 53. Defect descriptor - Bytes from Index format.

Format of the defect list sent during the DATA OUT phase when FmtData is set to one.

### 8.4.2.3 Physical Sector format

Each defect descriptor for the Physical Sector format specifies a defect that is the length of a sector. The defect descriptor is comprised of the cylinder number of the defect, the head number of the defect, and the defect sector number.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 1 2	(MSB) Cylinder Number of Defect							(LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect							
4 5 6 7	(MSB) Defect Sector Number							(LSB)
8n - 8n + 7	Defect Descriptor n							

Figure 54. Defect descriptor - Physical Sector format.

Format of the defect list sent during the DATA OUT phase when FmtData set to one.

---

## 8.5 INQUIRY (12h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 12h							
1	Reserved			Reserved = 0			CmdDt	EVPD
2	Page Code							
3	Reserved = 0							
4	Allocation Length							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 55. INQUIRY (12)

The INQUIRY command requests the parameters of the drive to be sent to the initiator.

- **CmdDT bit of one** specifies that the drive shall return the command support data information identified by the Page Code field in the CDB.
- **EVPD bit of one** specifies that the drive return the vital product data page identified by the Page Code field in the CDB<sup>1</sup>.
- **Page code** specifies which page of vital product data information the drive shall return.

---

<sup>1</sup> The available VPD pages are defined in the addendum provided for each different drive model in the section entitled *Inquiry Data Format*.

CmdDt	EVPD	PAGE CODE	Description
0	0	0	The drive returns the standard INQUIRY data.
0	0	Non Zero	The drive returns CHECK CONDITION status with the sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
0	1	Supported	The drive returns the vital product data of page code requested.
0	1	Unsupported	The drive returns CHECK CONDITION status with the sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB
1	0	Supported	The drive returns command support data of page code requested.
1	0	Unsupported	The drive returns 2 bytes data ( 0001h as unsupported).
1	1	Any values	The drive returns CHECK CONDITION status with the sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Figure 56. Page code descriptions

- **Allocation Length** specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for INQUIRY data to be returned. An allocation length of zero implies that no data returned. The drive will terminate the DATA IN phase when all available INQUIRY data has been transferred or when allocation length bytes have been transferred, whichever is less.

If an INQUIRY command is received from an initiator with a pending unit attention condition (before the drive reports CHECK CONDITION status), the drive processes the INQUIRY command. The unit attention condition is not cleared by this action.



## 8.5.1 INQUIRY DATA

Fields with a value shown inside quotes (e.g. Value = 'xyz') are character fields. A value not in quotes is a numeric value. Character fields are alphanumeric and represented in either ASCII or EBCDIC as stated.

### 8.5.1.1 INQUIRY data format - CmdDt = 0 EVPD = 0

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Qualifier = 0			Peripheral Device Type = 0				
1	RMB=0	Device-Type Modifier = 0						
2	ISO = 0		ECMA = 0			ANSI = 3		
3	RSVD = 0	TrmTsk = 0	Norm ACA=0	RSVD = 0	Response Data Format = 2			
4	Additional Length = 159 (9Fh)							
5	Reserved = 0							
6	RSVD = 0	EncSer = 0	RSVD = 0	Multip = 0	MChngr = 0	ACKREQ = 0	Addr32 = 0	Addr16 = 1
7	REL_A = 0	Wb_32 = 0	Wb_16 = 1	Sync = 1	Link = 1	TTD = 0	CmdQu = 1	RSVD = 0
8-15	Vendor ID = 'IBM ' (ASCII)							
16-31	Product ID (ASCII)							
32-35	Product Revision Level (ASCII)							
36-43	Unit Serial Number (ASCII)							
44-52	Reserved = 0							
53	Reserved = 0				Clocking=11b		QAS	IUS
54-95	Reserved = 0							
96-145	Copyright Notice (ASCII)							
146-163	Reserved = 0							

Figure 57. INQUIRY Data - CmdDt = 0 EVPD = 0

- **Qualifier** is set to zero to indicate that the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY message is currently supported. Qualifier is set to 011b when the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY message is not present.<sup>2</sup>
- **Peripheral Device Type** is set to zero to indicate that the device is Direct Access. Peripheral Dev. Type is set to 1Fh when the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY message is not present.
- **Removal Media Bit (RMB)** is always set to zero to indicate no removal media exist.
- **Device-Type Modifier** is set to zero.

<sup>2</sup> For all commands, except INQUIRY and REQUEST SENSE, if an invalid lun is specified, a CHECK CONDITION will be returned.

- **ISO** is set to zero to indicate that this drive does not claim compliance to the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) version of SCSI (ISO DP 9316).
- **ECMA** is set to zero to indicate that this drive does not claim compliance to the European Computer Manufacturers Association (ECMA) version of SCSI (ECMA-111).
- **ANSI** indicates the level of the ANSI standard that is supported by the drive. The drive supports ANSI SCSI version 3.
- **TrmTsk** (Terminate Task) field of 0 indicates the drive does not support the TERMINATE TASK task management function as defined in the SAM.
- **NormACA** (Normal ACA) field of 0 indicates the drive does not support setting the NACA bit to one in the Control Byte of the CDB as defined in the SAM.
- **Response Data Format** is set to two to indicate that the Inquiry Data Format as specified in ANSI SCSI version 2 is supported by the drive.
- **Additional Length** indicates the number of bytes of inquiry information that follows.
- **EncSer** (Enclosure Services) bit of 0 indicates that the drive does not contain an embedded enclosure service component.
- **MultiP** (MultiPort) bit of 0 indicates that the drive has a single port and does not implement multi- port requirements.
- **MChngr** (Medium Changer) bit is only supported when the RMB bit is one.
- **ACKREQQ** (ACKQ/REQQ) bit of 0 indicates that the drive does not support a request and acknowledge data transfer handshake on a Q cable.
- **Addr32** (Wide SCSI Address 32) bit of 0 indicates that the drive does not support 32 bit wide SCSI Addresses.
- **Addr16** (Wide SCSI Address 16) bit of 1 indicates that the drive supports 16 bit wide SCSI Addresses.
- **REL\_A** is set to zero to indicate that the drive does not support 'Relative Address Mode'.
- **Wb\_32** is set to zero to indicate that the drive does not support 32-bit wide data transfers.
- **Wb\_16** is set to one to indicate that the drive supports 16-bit wide data transfers.
- **Sync** is set to one to indicate that the drive supports synchronous data transfer.
- **Link** is set to one to indicate that the drive supports linked commands.
- **TTD** is set to zero to indicate that the drive does not support the CONTINUE I/O PROCESS and TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE message for this logical unit.
- **CmdQu** is set to one to indicate that the drive supports command queuing.
- **Vendor ID** is 'IBM' padded with ASCII blanks.
- **Product ID** is specified in ASCII characters. Refer to Section 4.3.1, "Product ID" on page 10.
- **Product Revision Level** indicates the level of microcode. It indicates RAM microcode level.
- **Unit Serial Number** contains the drive serial number.
- **Clocking** 11b indicates the drive supports ST (Single Transition) and DT (Double Transition) on synchronous transfer.
- **QAS** (Quick Arbitrate Supported) bit of one indicates that the drive supports the quick arbitrate feature; a bit of zero indicates that the drive does not support the quick arbitrate feature.
- **IUS** (Information Unit Supported) bit of one indicates that the drive supports information unit; a bit of zero indicates that the drive does not support information unit.

### 8.5.1.2 Inquiry data format - CmdDt = 1

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
1	Reserved				Support			
2	Version							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	CDB Size = m-5							
6	CDB Usage Data							
m								

Figure 58. Command support data format

- **Peripheral Qualifier** is set to zero to indicate that the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY Message is currently supported. Peripheral Qualifier is set to 011b when the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY Message is not present.<sup>3</sup>
- **Peripheral Device Type** is set to zero to indicate that the device is a Direct-Access. Peripheral Device Type is set to 1Fh when the LUN specified in the IDENTIFY Message is not present.
- **Support** indicates the type of command support. The following table defines the values and meanings of the Support field.

<sup>3</sup> For all commands except INQUIRY and REQUEST SENSE if an invalid LUN is specified, a CHECK CONDITION will be returned.

Support	Description
000b	Data about the requested SCSI operation code is not currently available.
001b	The drive does not support the tested SCSI operation code. All data after byte 1 is undefined.
010b	Reserved.
011b	The drive supports the tested SCSI operation code in conformance with the SCSI standard.
100b	Vendor-specific
101b	The drive supports the tested SCSI operation code in a vendor-specific manner.
110b	Vendor-specific
111b	Reserved

Figure 59. SUPPORT values and meanings

- **Version** indicates the level of the ANSI standard supported by the drive. The drive supports ANSI SCSI version 3.
- **CDB Size** indicates the number of bytes in the CDB for the operation, code, and size of the CDB Usage Data field in the return data.
- **CDB Usage Data** contains information about the CDB for the operation code. The first byte of the CDB Usage Data contains the operation code. All bytes except the first byte of the CDB Usage Data contain a usage map for bits in the CDB. In the usage map, the bit that is all or part of a field in the CDB is set to one, otherwise it is set to zero.

### 8.5.1.3 Inquiry data format - EVPD = 1 - Page Code = 00

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Qualifier = 0			Peripheral Device Type = 0				
1	Page Code = 00h							
2	Reserved = 0							
3	Page Length = 03h							
4	Supported Page Code = 00h							
5	Supported Page Code = 80h							
6	Supported Page Code = 83h							

Figure 60. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 00)

- **Qualifier** is set to zero to indicate that the LUN specified in the Command Block is currently supported.
- **Peripheral Device Type** is set to zero to indicate that the device is Direct Access.
- **Page Code** is set to 0; this field contains the same value as in the page code field of the INQUIRY command descriptor block.
- **Page length** specifies the length of the following page data.
- **The Supported Page Code** field contains the Page Codes supported by the drive. The list is in ascending order.

#### 8.5.1.4 Inquiry data format - EVPD = 1 - Page Code = 80h

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Qualifier = 0			Peripheral Device Type = 0				
1	Page Code = 80h							
2	Reserved = 0							
3	Page Length = 16 (10h)							
4-19	Serial Number (ASCII)							

---

Figure 61. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 80h)

- **Qualifier** is set to zero to indicate that the LUN specified in the Command Block is currently supported.
- **Peripheral Device Type** is set to zero to indicate that the device is Direct Access.
- **Page Code** is set to 80h, and this field contains the same value as in the page code field of the INQUIRY command descriptor block.
- **Page length** is set to 16; this field specifies the length of the following page data.
- **Serial Number** gives the drive serial number right aligned.

### 8.5.1.5 Inquiry data format - EVPD = 1 - Page Code = 83h

Byte	Bit								
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Qualifier = 0			Peripheral Device Type = 0					
1	Page Code = 83h								
2	Reserved = 0								
3	Page Length = 12 (0Ch)								
4	Reserved = 0				Code Set = 1				
5	Reserved = 0		Association = 0		Identifier Type = 3				
6	Reserved = 0								
7	Identifier Length = 8								
8-15	(MSB)			World Wide ID					(LSB)

Figure 62. INQUIRY DATA - EVPD = 1 (Page Code = 83h)

- **Qualifier** is set to zero to indicate that the LUN specified in the Command Block is currently supported.
- **Peripheral Device Type** is set to zero to indicate that the device is Direct Access.
- **Page Code** is set to 83h, and this field contains the same value as in the page code field of the INQUIRY command descriptor block.
- **Page length** is set to 12, and this field specifies the length of the following page data.
- **Code Set** field specifies the code set used for the identifier field. The drive supports binary.
- **Association** field specifies the entity with which the identifier field is associated. The drive supports value of 0h, the Identifier field is associated with the addressed physical or logical device.
- **Identifier Type** field specifies the format and assignment authority for the identifier. The drive supports the value of 03h.
- **World Wide ID** is a 64-bit unique identification for each drive. The format is **5005076hxxxyn** where
  - **xxx** is the 12-bit Block assignment defined for each model and manufacturing site. Refer to Section 4.3.2, "World Wide ID - Block assignment" on page 10.
  - **yy** is the 2-bit Port/Node ID select. This is 11b as for parallel SCSI interface devices.
  - **n** is the 22-bit drive unique serial number.

## 8.6 LOG SELECT (4Ch)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 4Ch							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			PCR	SP
2	PC		Reserved = 0					
3	Reserved = 0							
4								
5								
6								
7	(MSB) Parameter List Length						(LSB)	
8								
9	Reserved = 0						FLAG	LINK

Figure 63. LOG SELECT (4C)

The LOG SELECT command provides a means for the initiator to clear statistical information maintained by the drive and reported via the LOG SENSE command.

- **PCR** The Parameter Code Reset determines whether the LOG SENSE parameters will be cleared and unit attention posted for all other initiators. A value of 1 indicates that the parameters be cleared, while a value of zero (except when PC = 11b) indicates that the parameters not be cleared.
- **SP** The Save Parameters bit value of zero indicates that the page parameters not be saved. A value of 1 indicates that the page parameters that are savable be saved after they have been changed.
- **PC** The Page Control field defines the type of parameters to be selected. The PC field set to 11b (and PCR is then a don't care) indicates that the Default Cumulative values are set to their default values of 0. If the PC field is set to 01b and PCR is set to 1, the Current Cumulative values are also set to their default values.
- **Parameter List Length** The Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the parameter list that shall be located in the DATA OUT buffer. A parameter list length zero indicates that no pages shall be transferred.

If one or more fields of the CDB are not set correctly the command will be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status. The Sense Key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The LOG SELECT command will reset the counter variables to their default values of zero. These variables are listed in the LOG SENSE command.

To indicate that parameters have changed, the drive generates a unit attention condition for all initiators except the one that issued the LOG SELECT command.



## 8.7 LOG SENSE (4Dh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 4Dh							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			PPC= 0	SP
2	PC		Page Code					
3 4	Reserved = 0							
5 6	(MSB) Parameter Pointer						(LSB)	
7 8	(MSB) Allocation Length						(LSB)	
9	Reserved = 0					FLAG	LINK	

Figure 64. LOG SENSE

The LOG SENSE command allows the initiator to retrieve the statistical data regarding the drive.

- **PPC** (Parameter Pointer Control) bit must be set to zero. This specifies that the drive start transferring data starting from the field specified in the parameter pointer field for the number of bytes specified by the allocation length. If the PPC bit is set to 1, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a Sense Key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- **SP** (Save Parameters) bit set to 0 specifies that the drive does not save any log parameters. If it is set to 1, all page parameters that are savable (those pages denoted by a DS = 0 in the parameter header control byte) are saved.
- **PC** (Page Control) field defines the type of parameters to be selected. This field must be set to 01b to specify the current cumulative values. The drive does not support current threshold values, default threshold values and default cumulative values; therefore any value other than 01h will cause the command to end with a CHECK CONDITION with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- **Page Code** field identifies which page is being requested. This field must be set to the values indicated in Page 0. If the Page Code value is invalid a CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a Sense Key of Illegal Request and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- **Parameter Pointer Field** specifies the beginning field for the transfer. This field is only available for Page Code = 0Fh. If the parameter pointer field is greater than 3Fh for Page Code = 0Fh, or if the field is not zero for Page Code other than 0Fh, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- **Allocation Length** field specifies the maximum number of bytes the Initiator has allocated for returned Log Sense Data. No bytes are transferred if the length is zero. This condition is not considered an error. The drive terminates the Data In phase when all available LOG SENSE data has been transferred or when the number of bytes equals the allocation length, whichever is less.

## 8.7.1 Log Page parameters

Each log page begins with a four-byte page header followed by zero or more variable-length log parameters.

- **Page Header**

Page Code field identifies which log page is being transferred.

The Page Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following log parameters.

- **Log Parameters**

Each log parameter begins with a four-byte parameter header followed by one or more bytes of parameter value data.

The Parameter Code field identifies which log parameter is being transferred for that log page.

The Parameter Control field, the 3rd byte of each parameter header, contains several fields:

- **DU** (Disable Update) bit is set to 0 which indicates that the drive updates the log parameter value to reflect events that should be noted by that parameter.
- **DS** (Disable Save) bit is set to 1 to indicate the parameter is non-savable and is set to 0 to indicate that the parameter is savable.
- **TSD** (Drive Save Disable) bit is set to zero which indicates that the drive provides a drive defined method for saving log parameters.
- **ETC** (Enable Threshold Comparison) bit is set to 0 which indicates the drive does not perform comparisons between cumulative and any threshold values.
- **TMC** (Threshold Met Criteria) field is not valid because this drive does not perform threshold comparisons. This field is set to 0.
- **LBIN** (List Binary) bit is only valid if the LP is 1. If the LP bit is 1 and the LBIN bit is 0, the list parameter is a string of ASCII graphic code (20h - 7Eh). If the LP bit is 1 and the LBIN bit is 1, the list parameter is a list of binary information.
- **LP** (List Parameter) bit is set to 0 for parameters that are data counters. The LP bit is set to 1 for parameters that are lists.

## 8.7.2 Log Sense Page 0

Page 0 indicates the supported log sense pages. This page is used to determine which additional pages can be requested by an Initiator.

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 0					
1	Reserved							
2-3	Page Length = 000Ah (Number of Pages Supported)							
4	First supported page 0h							
5	Second supported page 2h							
6	Third supported page 3h							
7	Fourth supported page 5h							
8	Fifth supported page 6h							
9	Sixth supported page Dh							
10	Seventh supported page Eh							
11	Eighth supported page Fh							
12	Ninth supported page 10h							
13	Tenth supported page 2Fh							

---

Figure 65. Log Sense Page 0

### 8.7.3 Log Sense Page 2

This page contains counters for write errors.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 02h					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 54h							
4-5	Parameter Code = 00h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
7	Parameter Length = 08h							
8-15	Errors recovered without delay = 0							
16-17	Parameter Code = 01h							
18	DU=0	DS=0	TSD=0	ETC=0	TMC=0		LBIN=0	LP=0
19	Parameter Length = 08h							
20-27	Count of AE write fault errors							
28-29	Parameter Code = 02h							
30	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
31	Parameter Length = 08h							
32-39	Count of sector overrun errors							
40-41	Parameter Code = 03h							
42	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
43	Parameter Length = 08h							
44-51	Total number of soft errors							
52-53	Parameter Code = 04h							
54	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
55	Parameter Length = 08h							
56-63	Total of soft errors and hard errors							

Figure 66. Log Sense Page 2 (part 1 of 2)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
64-65	Parameter Code = 05h							
66	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
67	Parameter Length = 08h							
68-75	Total bytes written							
76-77	Parameter Code = 06h							
78	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
79	Parameter Length = 08h							
80-87	Total number of hard errors							

Figure 67. Log Sense Page 2 (part 2 of 2)

## 8.7.4 Log Sense Page 3

This page contains counters for read errors.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 03h					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 54h							
4-5	Parameter Code = 00h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
7	Parameter Length = 08h							
8-15	Errors recovered without delay = 0							
16-17	Parameter Code = 01h							
18	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
19	Parameter Length = 08h							
20-27	Count of errors recovered by off-line ECC corrections							
28-29	Parameter Code = 02h							
30	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
31	Parameter Length = 08h							
32-39	Count of ID CRC errors							
40-41	Parameter Code = 03h							
42	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
43	Parameter Length = 08h							
44-51	Total number of soft errors							
52-53	Parameter Code = 04h							
54	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
55	Parameter Length = 08h							
56-63	Times of soft errors and hard errors							
64-65	Parameter Code = 05h							

Figure 68. Log Sense Page 3 (part 1 of 2)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
66	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
67	Parameter Length = 08h							
68-75	Total bytes read							
76-77	Parameter Code = 06h							
78	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
79	Parameter Length = 08h							
80-87	Total number of hard errors							

Figure 69. Log Sense Page 3 (part 2 of 2)

## 8.7.5 Log Sense Page 5

This page contains counters for VERIFY command and the verify portion of WRITE AND VERIFY command.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 05h					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 54h							
4-5	Parameter Code = 00h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
7	Parameter Length = 08h							
8-15	Errors recovered without delay = 0							
16-17	Parameter Code = 01h							
18	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
19	Parameter Length = 08h							
20-27	Count of errors recovered by off-line ECC corrections							
28-29	Parameter Code = 02h							
30	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
31	Parameter Length = 08h							
32-39	Count of ID CRC errors							
40-41	Parameter Code = 03h							
42	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
43	Parameter Length = 08h							
44-51	Total number of soft errors							
52-53	Parameter Code = 04h							
54	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
55	Parameter Length = 08h							
56-63	Times of soft errors and hard errors							
64-65	Parameter Code = 05h							

Figure 70. Log Sense Page 5 (part 1 of 2)



Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
66	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
67	Parameter Length = 08h							
68-75	Total Bytes Verified							
76-77	Parameter Code = 06h							
78	DU = 0	DS = 0		TSD = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
79	Parameter Length = 08h							
80-87	Total number of hard errors							

Figure 71. Log Sense Page 5 (part 2 Of 2)

### 8.7.6 Log Sense Page 6

This page contains counters for seek errors.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 06h					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 0Ch							
4-5	Parameter Code = 00h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 0
7	Parameter Length = 08h							
8-15	Error count							

Figure 72. Log Sense Page 6

## 8.7.7 Log Sense Page D

This page contains temperature information.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 0Dh					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 0Ch							
4-5	Parameter Code = 0000h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 0
7	Parameter Length = 02h							
8	Reserved							
9	Current temperature (degrees Celsius)							
10-11	Parameter Code 0001h							
12	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 0
13	Parameter Length = 02h							
14	Reserved							
15	SMART threshold for temperature							

Figure 73. Log Sense Page D

## 8.7.8 Log Sense Page E

This page contains the start-stop cycle information.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 0Eh					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 24h							
4-5	Parameter Code = 0001h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 1
7	Parameter Length = 06h							
8-11	Year of Manufacture (4 ASCII characters)							
12-13	Week of Manufacture (2 ASCII characters)							
14-15	Parameter Code 0002h							
16	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 0	LP = 1
17	Parameter Length = 06h							
18-21	Accounting Date Year (4 ASCII characters)							
22-23	Accounting Date Week (2 ASCII characters)							
24-25	Parameter Code 0003h							
26	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 1
27	Parameter Length = 04h							
28-31	Start-stop cycles for lifetime							
32-33	Parameter Code 0004h							
34	DU = 0	DS = 1	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 1
35	Parameter Length = 04h							
36-39	Accumulated start-stop cycles							

Figure 74. Log Sense Page E

The date of manufacture cannot be saved using the LOG SELECT command. The accounting date specified by parameter code 0002h is blank when the drive is manufactured, it can be saved using the LOG SELECT command. The start-stop cycles for lifetime is a value of 10000 as the specifications for start-stop cycle of spindle motor by power on or START STOP UNIT command. The accumulated start-stop cycle is the count of start-stop cycle of spindle motor by power on or START STOP UNIT command.

## 8.7.9 Log Sense Page F

This page contains the Application Client Log.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 0Fh					
1	Reserved							
2-3	Page length = 4000h							
	Application client log parameter							
4-	First application client log parameter							
-4003h	Last application client log parameter							

The following table describes the application client log parameter structure.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-1	Parameter code							
2	DU = 1	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 1
3	Parameter length = FCh							
4-	First parameter byte							
255	Last parameter byte							

Figure 75. Log Sense Page F Application Client Log

Parameter code 0000h through 003Fh are supported.

The values stored in the parameter bytes represent data sent to the device in a previous LOG SELECT command.

## 8.7.10 Log Sense Page 10

This page contains Self-test results.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 10h					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 190h							
	Self-test results log parameters							
4-	First self-test results log parameter							
-403h	Last self-test results log parameter							

The results of the twenty most recent self-tests are stored in this Log page. The following table describes the self-test results log parameter structure.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-1	Parameter code							
2	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 1
3	Parameter Length = 10h							
4	Function Code		RSVD	Self-Test Results Value				
5	Extended Segment Number							
6-7	Timestamp							
8-15	LBA of First Failure							
16	Reserved			Sense Key				
17	Additional Sense Code							
18	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
19	Vendor specific							

Figure 76. Log Sense Page 10, Self-Test Results

- **Parameter Code** identifies the log parameter for the log page. The parameter Code field for the results of the most recent test will be 0001h. The parameter for the next most recent will be 0002h.
- **Function Code** contains the content of the Function Code field in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command that initiated this self-test.
- **Self-Test Results Value** is described in the table below.

Value	Description
0h	The self-test routine completed without error
1h	The background self-test routine was aborted by the initiator using a SEND DIAGNOSTICS command with the Abort Background self-test function
2h	The self-test routine was aborted by the application client by a Task Management function of a reset
3h	An unknown error occurred while the drive was executing the self-test routine and the drive was unable to complete the self-test routine
4h	The self-test completed with a test element that failed and it is not known which test element failed
5h	The first segment of the self-test failed
6h	The second segment of the self-test failed
7h	The third or greater segment of the self-test failed (see the Extended segment number field)
8h-Eh	Reserved
Fh	The self-test is in progress

Figure 77. Log Sense Page 10 Self-Test Results

- **Extended Segment Number** This field will be used to identify the number of the segment that failed during self-test. If no segment failed, this field will be 00h.
- **Timestamp** This field contains the total accumulated power-on hours of the drive at the time the self-test completed.
- **LBA of first failure** This field contains the LBA of the first error where a self-test error occurred. If no errors occurred during the self-test or the error is not related to a LBA, the field will be FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFh.
- **Sense Key, Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier** These fields will contain the additional information relating to the error or exception conditions during self-test.

Extended Segment Number	Foreground Test	Background Test
0h	NA	NA
1h	Drive ready check	Drive ready check
2h	RAM test	NA
3h	Spin check	Spin check
4h	Write, read and compare test	Write, read and compare test
5h	ECC circuit test	ECC circuit test
6h	Seek test	Seek test
7h	SMART check	SMART check
8h	Low level format check	Low level format check
9h	Physical head test	Physical head test
Ah	Read scan test	Read scan test
Bh	SMART check	SMART check

Figure 78. LOG SENSE Page 10 Extended Segment Number

### 8.7.11 LOG SENSE Page 2F

This page contains SMART Status and Temperature Reading.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page code = 2Fh					
1	Reserved							
2-3	PageLength = 8							
4-5	Parameter Code = 0000h							
6	DU = 0	DS = 0	TSD = 0	ETC = 0	TMC = 0		LBIN = 1	LP = 1
7	Parameter Length = 04h							
8	SMART Sense Code Byte							
9	SMART Sense Byte 21							
10	Current Temperature (degrees Celsius)							
11	SMART Threshold for Temperature							

Figure 79. Log Sense Page 2F

## 8.8 MODE SENSE (6) (1A)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 1Ah							
1	Reserved		RSVD	DBD	Reserved = 0			
2	PCF		Page Code					
3	Subpage Code							
4	Allocation Length							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 80. MODE SENSE (1A)

The MODE SENSE (1A) command provides a means for the drive to report various device parameters to the initiator. It is the complement to the MODE SELECT command.

If the **DBD** (Disable Block Descriptor) bit is zero, the drive will return the Block Descriptor. If the DBD bit is set to 1, the drive will not return the Block Descriptor.

**Allocation Length** indicates the maximum number of bytes which the initiator has set aside for the DATA IN phase. A value of zero is not considered an error. If the allocation length is smaller than the amount available, that portion of the data up to the allocation length will be sent. This may result in only a portion of a multi-byte field being sent.

**Page Control Field:** PCF (Page Control Field) defines the type of Page Parameter values to be returned.

### PCF Meaning

**0 0 Report current values.** The drive returns the current values under which the logical unit is presently configured for the page code specified. The current values returned are

1. The parameters set in the last successful MODE SELECT command.
2. The saved values if a MODE SELECT command has not been executed since the last power-on, hard RESET condition, or TARGET RESET message.

**Note:** The drive will not process the Mode Select command until the completion of spin-up. Therefore the initiator cannot modify the current values prior to the saved values being read in.

**0 1 Report changeable value.** The drive returns the changeable values for the page code specified. The page requested is returned containing information that indicates which fields are changeable. All bits of parameters that are changeable shall be set to one. Parameters that are *defined by the drive* shall be set to zero. If any part of a field is changeable, all bits in that field shall be set to one.

**Note:** For a value field such as the buffer ratios of page 2 the bit field will not indicate the range of supported values but rather that the field is supported.

**1 0 Report default value.** The drive returns the default values for the page code specified. The parameters not supported by the drive are set to zero.



**1 1 Report saved value.** The drive returns the saved value for the page code specified. Saved values are one of following:

- the values saved as a result of MODE SELECT command
- identical to the default values
- zero when the parameters are not supported

The Page Length byte value of each page returned by the drive indicates up to which fields are supported on that page.

**Page Code:** This field specifies which page or pages to return. Page code usage is defined in the figure below.

Page Code	Description
00h - 1Ch 3Fh	Return specific page Return all available pages

Figure 81. Page Code Usage

**Subpage Code:** This field specifies the subpage to return. Subpages are supported for Port Control Mode Page. For other Mode Pages this field should be zero.

## 8.8.1 Mode Parameter List

The mode parameter list contains a header followed by zero or more block descriptors followed by zero or more variable length pages.

### 8.8.1.1 Header

The six-byte command descriptor block header is defined below.

#### Mode parameter header (6)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Mode Data Length							
1	Medium Type = 0							
2	WP	Reserved = 0						
3	Block Descriptor Length (= 0 or 8)							

Figure 82. Mode parameter header (6)

The ten-byte command descriptor block header is defined below.

### Mode parameter header (10)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 1	(MSB) Mode Data Length							(LSB)
2	Medium Type = 0							
3	WP	Reserved = 0						
4 5	Reserved = 0							
6 7	(MSB) Block Descriptor Length ( = 0 or 8)							(LSB)

Figure 83. Mode parameter header (10)

- **Mode Data Length.** When using the MODE SENSE command, the mode data length field specifies the length in bytes of the following data that is available to be transferred. The mode data length does not include the length byte itself. When using the MODE SELECT command, this field is reserved.
- **Medium Type** field is always set to zero in the drive (Default Medium Type).
- **WP.** When used with the MODE SELECT command, the Write Protect (WP) bit is reserved.  
When used with the MODE SENSE command, a Write Protect (WP) bit of zero indicates that the medium is write enabled.
- **Block Descriptor Length** specifies the length in bytes of the block descriptors.  
When used with the MODE SELECT command, zero or eight is supported by the drive.  
When used with the MODE SENSE command, the drive returns eight to indicate that only a single block descriptor is available.

### 8.8.1.2 Block Descriptor

---

Byte 0 Byte 1 Byte 2 Byte 3	Number of Blocks (MSB)    (LSB)
Byte 4	Density code = 0
Byte 5 Byte 6 Byte 7	Block Length

---

Figure 84. MODE Parameter Block Descriptor

The Block descriptor provides formatting information about the Number of Blocks (user addressable) to format at the specified Block Length.

- **Number of Blocks**

When used with the MODE SELECT command, the **Number of Blocks** field must be

- Zero to indicate not to change available blocks
- 0xFFFFFFFF to indicate all available blocks
- The exact number of blocks in the data area of the drive, which can be obtained with the MODE SENSE
- The number of blocks less than exact one, in order to **CLIP** the number of blocks

Any other value is invalid and causes the command to fail with CHECK CONDITION status.

When used with the MODE SENSE command, the field contain exact number of blocks.

- **Block Length**

When used with the MODE SELECT command, the **Block length** field must contain the value from 512 to 528 (2 bytes step) or zero. Otherwise the drive will terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status.

A Format Unit command is required to cause these parameters to become current only if the block length parameter is different from the current block length.

When used with the MODE SENSE command, the field is dependent on how the media is currently formatted.

### 8.8.1.3 Page Descriptor

Byte 0	PS	RSVD= 0	Page Code
Byte 1	Page Length		
Byte 2-n	Mode Parameters		

Figure 85. MODE Parameter Page Format

Each mode page contains a page code, a page length, and a set of mode parameters.

When using the MODE SENSE command, a Parameter Savable (PS) bit of one indicates that the mode page can be saved by the drive in the reserved area of the drive. A PS bit of zero indicates that the supported parameters cannot be saved. When using the MODE SELECT command, the PS bit is reserved (zero).

The drive supports the following mode page code:

Page	Description	PS
00	Vendor Unique Parameters	1
01	Read-Write Error Recovery Parameters	1
02	Disconnect/Reconnect Control Parameters	1
03	Format Device Parameters	0
04	Rigid Disk Geometry Parameters	0
07	Verify Error Recovery Parameters	1
08	Caching Parameters	1
0A	Control Mode Page	1
0C	Notch Parameters	1
19	Port Control Page	1
1A	Power Control Parameters	1
1C	Informational Exceptions Control	1

Figure 86. Page Code Usage

The page length field specifies the length in bytes of the mode parameters that follow. If the initiator does not set this value to the value that is returned for the page by the MODE SENSE command, the drive will terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status.

## 8.8.2 Mode Page 0 (Vendor Unique Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 00h						80h
1	Page Length = 0Eh								0Eh
2	QPE	SSM	Ignored	UAI	MRG	Ignored		ARHES	11h
3	ASDPE	Ignored	CMDAC	Ignored			RRNDE	[CPE]	21h
4	Ignored								00h
5	Ignored			FDD	Ignored		CAEN	Ignored	12h
6	IGRA	AVERP	Ignored			ECRC	QM	Ignored	00h
7	Ignored								00h
8	Ignore	[ADC]	Ignored		LED Mode				40h
9	Temperature								00h
10	Command Aging Limit (Hi byte)								00h
11	Command Aging Limit (Low byte)								30h
12	QPE Read Threshold								0Ah
13	QPE Write Threshold								0Ah
14	DRRT	Ignored			FFMT	Ignored			00h
15	Ignored		FCERT	Ignored		HADR	IRT	IVR	00h

Figure 87. Vendor Unique Parameters - Page 0

Parameters in [] such as [CPE] are ignored. Ignored parameters can take any value. Reserved (RSVD) parameters should be set to zero.

Fields marked in the table as 'Ignored' are not used or checked by the drive. They will be initialized to zero but may be set as desired for compatibility with older drives.

- **QPE** (Qualify Post Error) of one causes the drive to report only those recovered data errors which exceed the QPE Read/Write Threshold. If QPE is set to one, IRT and IVR should be set to zero. QPE of zero causes the drive to report all recovered data errors.
- **SSM** (Synchronous Select Mode) of one enables the drive to initiate an SDTR message and a WDTR message the first time a LUN is selected with Attention and is in asynchronous mode or narrow mode if Enable TI-SDTR jumper is not installed. If Enable TI-SDTR jumper is installed, this bit is ignored.
- **UAI** (Unit Attention Inhibit) is ignored when the UAI jumper is removed from the drive. If the UAI jumper is added to the drive, then this bit controls the generation of unit attention conditions.
- **MRG** (Merge G-List into P-List) of one enables the merging the Grown Defect List (G-List) entries into the Primary Defect List (P-List) during FORMAT UNIT command.
- **ARHES** (Automatic Reassign Hard Error Sites) of one causes the LBA of a unrecovered read error internally registered as a reassign candidate and, when a WRITE command is received to the failing LBA, the data is written and verified if the error still exists. If the error still occurs on the failing LBA, it will be reassigned. If the error is cleared, the drive will remove the reassign candidate for the LBA.

ARHES of zero indicates the drive will not perform ARHES operation. ARRE and AWRE (Mode Page 1) do not affect ARHES operation and ARHES works independently.

- **ASDPE** (Additional Save Data Pointer Enable) is used to control the sending of additional save data pointers messages. When it is set to one, it will cause a SAVE DATA POINTER message to be sent on every disconnection. This bit is only used by the drive after the Default Mode parameter values are overridden with the Saved values which are read from the reserved area of the media as a part of the motor startup sequence. Before the Saved values are read from the reserved area of the media, the SAVE DATA POINTER message is always sent to the Initiator prior to disconnection. When ASDPE is set to zero, a SAVE DATA POINTER message is sent only if the current connection contained a data phase and a further data phase will be required to complete the command.
- **CMDAC** (Command Active) works in conjunction with LED Mode. See LED Mode.
- **RRNDE** (Report Recovered Non Data Errors) controls the reporting of recovered non data errors (write soft errors) when PER (Mode Page 1) bit is set to one. If RRNDE is set to one, recovered non data errors are reported. If RRNDE bit is set to zero, recovered non data errors are not reported.
- **CPE** (Concurrent Processing Enable) is ignored.
- **FDD** (Format Degraded Disable) of one prevents the drive from reporting Format Degraded. An FDD of zero indicates that Format Degraded is reported for the TEST UNIT READY command and causes media access commands such as READ to report a media error if degraded.
- **CAEN** (Command Aging Enabled) of one causes the Command Aging Limit timer to be used to avoid commands waiting in the command queue for an indefinite period. When commands have been in the queue for a period of time greater than Command Aging Limit, they will be reordered to be executed on a first come first served basis. When CAEN is set to zero, commands are always executed based on the queue reordering rules.
- **IGRA** (Ignore Reassigned LBA) of one prevents the drive from processing reassigned LBA when RC (Mode Page 1) is set to one. The main purpose of IGRA is to avoid undesirable delay in read operation due to reassigned LBA for Audio Visual application. IGRA of zero enables the drive to process reassigned LBA even if RC (Mode Page 1) is to one.
- **AVERP** (AV ERP Mode) determines if Recovery Time Limit (RTL, Mode Page 1 and 7) is a command timer (AVERP is one) or an ERP timer (AVERP is zero). When AVERP is set to one, the RTL timer starts when a command is picked up from the command queue, and the timer is running until the command completion or time out. For compatibility with earlier products, when AVERP is set to one, Read Retry Count and Write Retry Count (Mode Page 1) specify the maximum retry counts for ERP regardless of ECRC. When AVERP is set to zero, the RTL timer runs only during ERP.
- **ECRC** (Enable Changing of Retry Count) of one enable Read Retry Count and Write Retry Count (Mode Page 1) as the maximum retry counts for ERP. ECRC of zero specifies that the drive performs all ERP steps when Read Retry Count and Write Retry Count are set to a non-zero value.
- **ADC** (Adaptive Cache Enable) is ignored.
- **HADR** (Hide ADR) of one hides G-List entries by Auto Defect Reallocation (ADR) from READ DEFECT DATA.
- **LED Mode** controls the behavior of LED. There are 4 types of LED behavior.
  - Motor Active:* LED is turned on when spindle motor is running.
  - Command Active:* LED is turned on a command is under process or in the queue.
  - Degraded Mode:* LED stays on when the drive enters the Degraded Mode.
  - Command Active/Degraded Mode:* LED is turned on for both cases.

- LED Mode = 0h: CMDAC determines the behavior of LED.  
     CMDAC is one: Command Active  
     CMDAC is zero: Motor Active
  - LED Mode = 1h: Motor Active
  - LED Mode = 2h: Command Active
  - LED Mode = 3h: Degraded Mode
  - LED Mode = 4h: Command Active/Degraded Mode
  - LED Mode = other: Motor Active
- **Temperature Threshold** specifies the threshold value in degrees Celsius for the SMART warning for temperature. A value of 0 selects the default value (85 degrees Celsius).
  - **Command Aging Limit** controls the maximum time that a command should wait in the command queue when the CAEN bit is set. Each unit of this timer is 50 ms.
  - **QPE Read Threshold** specifies the additional ERP steps in addition to the default ERP steps before reporting recovered errors for read operations when QPE and PER (Mode Page 1) are set to one. The verify operations also use QPE Read Threshold.
  - **QPE Write Threshold** specifies the additional ERP steps in addition to the default ERP steps before reporting recovered errors for write operations when QPE, PER (Mode Page 1) and RRNDE are set to one.
  - **DRRT** (Disable Restore Reassign Target) of one disables the reading and restoration of the drive LBA during a REASSIGN BLOCKS command. If DRRT is zero, the REASSIGN BLOCKS command attempts to restore the drive LBAs data for reassignment. If the data cannot be restored, a data pattern of all 00's is used.
  - **FFMT** (Fast Format Enable) of one allows the formatting of the drive without writing to the customer data area. All format operations are allowed including changing block sizes and manipulating defects. Fast Format operation assumes an data initialization is done later. Read operation without the data initialization may cause unrecoverable read errors.
  - **FCERT** (Format Certification) of one specifies the certification will be performed during a FORMAT UNIT command. A FCERT of zero disables the certification.
  - **IRT** (Integration Reassign Threshold) of one specifies the use of lower thresholds for reporting recovered errors and auto reallocation for READ and WRITE commands for the manufacturing test phase of system. When IRT is set to zero, the default thresholds are used.
  - **IVR** (Integration Verify Recovery) of one specifies the use of lower thresholds for reporting recovered errors for VERIFY commands for the manufacturing test phase of system. When IVR is set to zero, the default threshold is used.

### 8.8.3 Mode Page 1 (Read/Write Error Recovery Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default	
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 01h							81h
1	Page Length = 0Ah								0Ah	
2	AWRE	ARRE	TB	RC	EER=0	PER	DTE	DCR	C0h	
3	Read Retry Count								01h	
4	Correction Span (Ignored)								00h	
5	Head Offset Count (Ignored)								00h	
6	Data Strobe Offset Count (Ignored)								00h	
7	Reserved								00h	
8	Write Retry Count								01h	
9	Reserved								00h	
10	(MSB)	Recovery Time Limit								00h
11										(LSB)

Figure 88. Mode Page 1 (Vendor Unique Parameters )

The Read-Write recovery parameters that will be used during any command that performs a read or write operation to the medium are as follows:

- **AWRE** (Automatic Write Reallocation Enabled) of one indicates that the drive performs automatic re-allocation of defective data blocks during write operations. AWRE of zero indicates that the drive will not perform automatic reallocation of defective data blocks during write operations.
- **ARRE** (Automatic Read Reallocation Enabled) of one indicates that the drive performs automatic re-allocation of defective data blocks during read operations. ARRE of zero indicates that the drive will not perform automatic reallocation of defective data blocks during read operations.
- **TB** (Transfer Block) of one indicates that a data block that is not recovered by ERP is transferred to the initiator before CHECK CONDITION status is returned. TB of zero indicates that such a data block will not be transferred to the initiator. Data blocks that can be recovered are always transferred regardless of the value of TB.
- **RC** (Read Continuous) of one requests the drive to transfer the entire requested length of data without adding delays which would increase or ensure data integrity. This implies that the drive may send erroneous data. This bit has priority over all other error control bits (PER, DTE, DCR, TB). RC of zero indicates normal interpretation of PER, DTE, DCR, and TB values. The RC setting is used by the drive when reporting errors associated with the transfer of the Initiator's data for READ (6) and READ (10) commands:

**Note:** The drive implementation of the RC option is to disable error detection of the data fields but continue normal error detection and recovery for errors occurring in the servo field. If a servo field failure occurs, normal ERP steps are taken which result in considerable recovery action.

- **EER** (Enable Early Recovery) must be set to zero, indicating that the drive uses ERP that minimizes the risk of misdetection or miscorrection during the data transfer.



- **PER** (Post Error) of one indicates that the drive reports recovered errors. PER of zero disables the reporting of recovered errors.
- **DTE** (Disable Transfer on Error) is ignored, but it must be set to zero if PER is set to zero.
- **DCR** (Disable Correction) of one indicates that the off-line ECC correction is not used for data error recovery. A DCR of zero indicates that the off-line ECC correction is used.
- **Read Retry Count** sets a limit on the ERP steps in which the drive attempts to recover read errors. A value of zero disables all ERP. When ECRC (Mode Page 0) is set to zero, a value of non-zero enables all ERP steps. When ECRC is one, the value in Read Retry Count sets the maximum steps of ERP.
- **Correction Span** is ignored, and the drive always uses its maximum correction capabilities.
- **Head Offset Count** is ignored.
- **Write Retry Count** sets a limit on the ERP steps in which the drive attempts to recover write errors. A value of zero disables all ERP. When ECRC (Mode Page 0) is set to zero, a value of non-zero enables all ERP steps. When ECRC is one, the value in Write Retry Count sets the maximum steps of ERP.
- **Recovery Time Limit** is a timer for the maximum command execution time (AVERP is set to one, Mode Page 0) or the maximum accumulated ERP time (AVERP is zero). The unit of timer value is 1 ms which must be from 40 ms to 65535 ms (65.5 seconds). If time out occurs, a CHECK CONDITION will be returned.

The following summarizes valid modes of operation. If an illegal mode is set, the MODE SELECT command will complete successfully but the action of the drive when an error occurs is undefined.

PER	DTE	DCR	TB	DESCRIPTION
0	0	0	0	Retries and Error Correction are attempted. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with no CHECK CONDITION status at the end of the transfer.  <b>no err</b> The transfer length is exhausted.  <b>soft err</b> The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors.  <b>hard err</b> Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is not transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
0	0	0	1	Retries and Error Correction are attempted. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with no CHECK CONDITION status at the end of the transfer.  <b>no err</b> The transfer length is exhausted.  <b>soft err</b> The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors.  <b>hard err</b> Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
0	0	1	0	Retries are attempted but no error correction (ECC) is applied. Recovered data (if any) are transferred with no CHECK CONDITION status at the end of the transfer.  <b>no err</b> The transfer length is exhausted.  <b>soft err</b> The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors.  <b>hard err</b> Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
0	0	1	1	Retries are attempted but no error correction (ECC) is applied. Recovered data (if any) are transferred with no CHECK CONDITION status at the end of the transfer.  <b>no err</b> The transfer length is exhausted.  <b>soft err</b> The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors.  <b>hard err</b> Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
0	1	0	0	Illegal Request-DTE must be zero when PER is zero
0	1	0	1	Illegal Request-DTE must be zero when PER is zero
0	1	1	0	Illegal Request-DTE must be zero when PER is zero
0	1	1	1	Illegal Request-DTE must be zero when PER is zero

- 1 0/1 0 0 The highest level error is reported at the end of transfer. Retries and error correction are attempted. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with CHECK CONDITION status and RECOVERED ERROR Sense Key set at the end of the transfer.
- no err** The transfer length is exhausted.
  - soft err** The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors. The information byte in the sense data will contain the logical block address of the last recovered error.
  - hard err** Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is not transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
- 1 0/1 0 1 The highest level error is reported at the end of transfer. Retries and error correction are attempted. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with CHECK CONDITION status and RECOVERED ERROR Sense Key set at the end of the transfer.
- no err** The transfer length is exhausted.
  - soft err** The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors. The information byte in the sense data will contain the logical block address of the last recovered error.
  - hard err** Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
- 1 0/1 1 0 The highest level error is reported at the end of transfer. Retries are attempted but ECC is not applied. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with CHECK CONDITION status and RECOVERED ERROR Sense Key set at the end of the transfer.
- no err** The transfer length is exhausted.
  - soft err** The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors. The information byte in the sense data will contain the logical block address of the last recovered error.
  - hard err** Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is not transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate Sense Key.
- 1 0/1 1 1 The highest level error is reported at the end of transfer. Retries are attempted but ECC is not applied. Recovered and/or corrected data (if any) are transferred with CHECK CONDITION status and RECOVERED ERROR sense key set at the end of the transfer.
- no err** The transfer length is exhausted.
  - soft err** The transfer length is exhausted. Transferred data includes blocks containing recovered errors. The information byte in the sense data will contain the logical block address of the last recovered error.
  - hard err** Data transfer stops when an unrecoverable error is encountered. The unrecoverable block is transferred to the initiator. The drive then creates the CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate sense key.

## 8.8.4 Mode Page 2 (Disconnect/Reconnect Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 02h						82h
1	Page Length = 0Eh								0Eh
2	Read Buffer Full Ratio								00h
3	Write Buffer Empty Ratio								00h
4-5	(MSB)	Bus Inactivity Limit = 0						(LSB)	00h 00h
6-7	(MSB)	Disconnect Time Limit = 0						(LSB)	00h 00h
8-9	(MSB)	Connect Time Limit = 0						(LSB)	00h 00h
10-11	(MSB)	Maximum Burst Size						(LSB)	00h 00h
12		Fair arbitration	DIMM	RSVD	DTDC			70h	
13-15	Reserved = 0								00h 00h 00h

Figure 89. Mode Page 2 (Disconnect/Reconnect Parameters )

The disconnect/reconnect page provides the initiator with the means to tune the performance of the SCSI bus.

An initiator may use the IDENTIFY message to grant the drive the general privilege of disconnecting. (Disconnect requests may still be selectively rejected by the initiator by issuing a MESSAGE REJECT).

The drive uses the disconnect/reconnect parameters to control reconnection during READ, WRITE, and WRITE AND VERIFY commands.

- **Read Buffer Full Ratio** is the numerator of a fraction whose denominator is 256. The fraction indicates how full the drive data buffer should be before attempting to reconnect to the SCSI bus. If the ratio is set to 0h, the drive will calculate and use an optimal ratio based on the negotiated transfer rate.
- **Write Buffer Empty Ratio** is the numerator of a fraction whose denominator is 256. The fraction indicates how empty the drive data buffer should be before attempting to reconnect to the SCSI bus. If the ratio is set to 0h, the drive will calculate and use an optimal ratio based on the negotiated transfer rate.
- **Maximum Burst Size** is the maximum amount of data that the drive transfers during a data phase before disconnecting if the Initiator has granted the disconnect privilege. This value is expressed in increments of single block size (for example, a value of 0001h means 512 bytes, 0002h means 1024 bytes when the block size is 512 bytes). Disconnections attempted by the drive are on block boundaries only. For the case when (Maximum Burst Size x Block Size) is less than the Block Length, the drive will transfer 1 block of data before attempting to disconnect. Value of 0000h indicates there is no limit on the amount of data transferred per connection. Regardless of the value in Maximum Burst Size the drive disconnects prior to completion of the data phase if the internal data buffer segment becomes empty during a Read command or full during a Write command.

- **DIMM** (Disconnect Immediate) of one indicates that the drive is required to disconnect after receiving a command prior to starting a data phase. A DIMM of zero indicates that the drive may transfer data for a command immediately after receiving it without disconnecting. Whether or not the drive does so depends upon the workload and the settings of the other parameters in this mode page.

**Note:** Priority commands do not disconnect from the SCSI bus.

- **DTDC** (Data Transfer Disconnect Control) field defines further restrictions for when a disconnect is permitted.
  - A value of 00b indicates that DTDC is not used by the drive and the disconnect is controlled by the other fields in this page.
  - A value of 01b indicates that the drive shall not attempt to disconnect when the data transfer of a command has started until all data which the command is to transfer has been transferred. The connect time limit and bus inactivity limit are ignored during the data transfer.
  - The value 10b is reserved.
  - A value of 11b indicates that the drive shall not attempt to disconnect when the data transfer of a command has started until the command is complete. The connect time limit and bus inactivity limit are ignored when data transfer has started.

**Note:** If DTDC is nonzero and the maximum burst size is nonzero, a CHECK CONDITION status will be returned. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code set to ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

- **Fair arbitration** If the Fair arbitration field is set to 000b, the drive shall not use arbitration fairness during normal arbitration. If this field is set to a nonzero value, the drive shall use arbitration fairness during normal arbitration.

Both the Read Buffer Full Ratio and the Write Buffer Empty Ratio pertain to the current active notch. For each active notch as defined in page 0Ch there are separate Read Buffer Full Ratios and Write Buffer Empty Ratios. When the active notch is set to zero, the values are applied in mode page 0Ch across all notches.

### 8.8.5 Mode Page 3 (Format Device Parameters)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS = 0	RSVD=0	Page Code = 03h					
1	Page Length = 16h							
2	(MSB) Tracks per Zone (LSB)							
3								
4	(MSB) Alternate Sectors per Zone = 0 (LSB)							
5								
6	(MSB) Alternate Tracks per Zone = 0 (LSB)							
7								
8	(MSB) Alternate Tracks per Logical Unit = 0 (LSB)							
9								
10	(MSB) Sectors Per Track (LSB)							
11								
12	(MSB) Data Bytes per Physical Sector (LSB)							
13								
14	(MSB) Interleave = 1 (LSB)							
15								
16	(MSB) Track Skew Factor (LSB)							
17								
18	(MSB) Cylinder Skew Factor (LSB)							
19								
20	SSEC=0	HSEC=0	RMB=0	SURF=0	RESERVED			
21-23	RESERVED							

Figure 90. Mode Page 3 (Format Device Parameters)

The format device page contains parameters which specify the medium format. This page contains no changeable parameters.

- **Tracks per Zone** specifies the number of tracks within the zone. This field is a function of the active notch.

A value of 0 in the following parameters indicates that they are drive specific.

- Alternate Sectors per Zone
  - Alternate Tracks per Zone
  - Alternate Tracks per Logical Unit
- **Sectors per Track** specifies the number of physical sectors within each track. This field is a function of the active notch.
  - **Data Bytes per Physical Sector** specifies the number of user data bytes per physical sector. The value depends upon the current formatted block length.
  - **Track Skew Factor** indicates the number of physical sectors between the last block of one track and the first block on the next sequential track of the same cylinder. This field is a function of the active notch.
  - **Cylinder Skew Factor** indicates the number of physical sectors between the last block of one cylinder and the first block on the next sequential cylinder. This field is a function of the active notch.
  - **SSEC** of zero indicates that the drive does not support soft sector formatting.
  - **HSEC** of one indicates that the drive supports hard sector formatting.
  - **RMB** of zero indicates that the media does not support a removable fixed disk.
  - **SURF** of zero indicates that progressive addresses are assigned to all logical blocks in a cylinder prior to allocating addresses within the next cylinder.

## 8.8.6 Mode Page 4 (Rigid Disk Drive Geometry Parameters)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RSVD= 0		Page Code = 04h					
1	Page Length = 16h							
2-4	(MSB)		Number of Cylinders				(LSB)	
5	Number of heads							
6-8	(MSB)		Starting Cylinder - Write Precompensation = 0				(LSB)	
9-11	(MSB)		Starting Cylinder - Reduced Write Current = 0				(LSB)	
12-13	(MSB)		Drive Step Rate (Not used)				(LSB)	
14-16	(MSB)		Landing Zone Cylinder (Not used)				(LSB)	
17	RESERVED					RPL = 0		
18	Rotational Offset = 00 (Not used)							
19	RESERVED							
20-21	(MSB)		Medium Rotation Rate in RPM				(LSB)	
22-23	RESERVED							

Figure 91. Mode Page 4 (Rigid Disk Drive Geometry Parameters)

The rigid disk drive geometric page specifies various parameters for the drive.

- **RPL = 0** indicates that the drive does not support spindle synchronization.



## 8.8.7 Mode Page 7 (Verify Error Recovery Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default	
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 07h							87h
1	Page Length = 0Ah								0Ah	
2	Reserved				EER=0	PER	DTE=0	DCR	00h	
3	Verify Retry Count								01h	
4	Correction Span (Ignored)								00h	
5	Reserved								00h	
6	Reserved								00h	
7	Reserved								00h	
8	Reserved								00h	
9	Reserved								00h	
10	(MSB) Verify Recovery Time Limit (LSB)								00h	
11									00h	

Figure 92. Mode Page 7 (Verify Error Recovery Parameters)

The Verify recovery parameters are used for VERIFY command and verify portion of WRITE AND VERIFY command.

PER, DTE, and DCR settings in page 7 override those of page 1 during VERIFY and verify portion of WRITE AND VERIFY commands.

- **PER.** See below for description of bit values.
- **DTE** must be zero since the drive always continues on recovered verify operation errors.
- **DCR.** See below for description of bit values.

There are only four valid conditions for the PER, DTE, and DCR bits. All other combinations return CHECK CONDITION status.

PER	DTE	DCR	DESCRIPTION
0	0	0	Soft errors are not reported. ECC is applied to recover the data.
1	0	0	Soft errors are reported. ECC is applied to recover the data.
0	0	1	Soft errors are not reported. ECC is not used to recover the data.
1	0	1	Soft errors are reported. ECC is not used to recover the data.

- **Verify Retry Count** sets a limit on the amount of ERP steps the drive attempts when recovering errors during processing of VERIFY or WRITE AND VERIFY command. A value of 0 disables all recovery. A values of 1 enables all steps of ERP. Only the values of 0 and 1 are valid.
- **Verify Correction Span** is ignored.

- **Verify Recovery Time Limit** is a timer for the maximum command execution time (AVERP is set to one, Mode Page 0) or the maximum accumulated ERP time (AVERP is zero). The unit of timer value is 1 ms which must be from 40 ms to 65535 ms (65.5 seconds). If time out occurs, a CHECK CONDITION will be returned.

### 8.8.8 Mode Page 8 (Caching Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default		
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0			
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 08h							88h	
1	Page Length = 12h									12h	
2	[IC]	[ABPF]	[CAP]	[DISC]	SIZE	WCE	[MF]	RCD		04h	
3	Demand Read Retention Priority (ignored)				Write Retention Priority (ignored)					00h	
4-5	Disable Pre-fetch Transfer Length (ignored)									FFh FFh	
6-7	Minimum Pre-fetch (ignored)									00h 00h	
8-9	Maximum Pre-fetch (ignored)									FFh FFh	
10-11	Maximum Pre-fetch Ceiling (ignored)									FFh FFh	
12	[FSW]	LBCSS	DRA	Reserved							00h
13	Number of Cache Segments									1Ah	
14-15	(MSB)	Cache Segment Size						(LSB)		00h 00h	
16	Reserved									00h	
17-19	(MSB)	Non Cache Segment Size (ignored)						(LSB)		000000h	

Figure 93. Page 8 (Caching Parameters)

The caching parameters page defines parameters that affect the use of the cache.

- **IC** (Initiator Control) is ignored. The drive will always use the Number of Cache Segments or Cache Segment Size fields.
- **ABPF** (Abort Pre-Fetch) is ignored.
- **CAP** (Caching Analysis Permitted) is ignored.
- **DISC** (Discontinuity) is ignored.
- **SIZE** (Size Enable) of one indicates that the Cache Segment Size is used to control caching segmentation. When SIZE is set to zero, the Number of Cache Segments is used.
- **WCE** (Write Cache Enable) of one indicates that the drive may issue GOOD status for a WRITE command after successfully storing the data to a cache segment. When WCE is set to one, the drive

operates as if AWRE (Mode Page 1) is set to one. When WCE is set to zero indicates that the drive issues GOOD status for a WRITE command only after successfully writing the data to the media.

**Note:** When WCE is set to one, a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command must be issued to write the data in cache segments to be written to the media before powering down the drive.

- **MF** (Multiplication Factor) is ignored.
- **RCD** (Read Cache Disable) of one indicates that the drive does not use the data in the cache segments for a READ command. RCD of zero indicates that the drive may return some or all of the data from cache segments for READ.
- **Demand Read Retention Priority** is ignored.
- **Write Retention Priority** is ignored but must be 0h, 1h, or Fh.
- **Disable Pre-fetch Transfer Length** is ignored.
- **Minimum Pre-fetch** is ignored.
- **Maximum Pre-fetch** is ignored.
- **Maximum Pre-fetch ceiling** is ignored.
- **FSW** (Force Sequential Write) is ignored.
- **LBCSS** (Logical Block Cache Segment Size) of one indicates that the unit of Cache Segment Size is logical block. When LBCSS is set to zero, the units is byte.
- **DRA** (Disable Read Ahead) of one requests that the drive not read into the buffer any logical block beyond the addressed logical block. When DRA is set at zero, the drive may continue to read logical blocks into the buffer beyond the addressed logical block.
- **Number of Cache Segments** is used to select the number of cache segments. This field is valid only when SIZE is set at zero. It is ignored when SIZE is set to one. The drive supports a value of 1 to 255 as the number of Cache Segment.
- **Cache Segment Size** is the requested cache segment size in byte or logical block, depending upon LBCSS. Cache Segment Size is valid only when SIZE is set to one.
- **Non Cache Segment Size** is ignored.

## 8.8.9 Mode Page A (Control Mode Page Parameters)

Byte	Bit								Default	
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 0Ah							8Ah
1	Page Length = 0Ah								0Ah	
2	TST=000b		Reserved				GLSTD=0	RLEC=0	00h	
3	Queue Algorithm Modifier			RSVD=0	QErr		DQue		00h	
4	EECA=0	Reserved = 0			RAENP = 0	UAAENP = 0	EAENP = 0	00h		
5	Reserved = 0								00h	
6-7	(MSB)	Ready AEN Holdoff Period						(LSB)	00h	
8-9	(MSB)	Busy Timeout Period						(LSB)	00h	
10-11	(MSB)	Extended Self-test Routine Completion Time						(LSB)	---	

Figure 94. Page A (Control Mode Page Parameters)

The control parameters defines parameters for several SCSI features.

- **Task Set Type (TST)** specifies the type of task set. The drive supports the value of 000b, task set per logical unit for all initiators.
- **Queue algorithm modifier** specifies restrictions on the algorithm used for reordering commands that are tagged with the SIMPLE message.

0h : Restricted reordering. The drive reorders the actual execution sequence of the queued commands from each initiator such that data integrity is maintained for that initiator.

1h : Unrestricted reordering allowed. The drive may reorder the actual execution sequence of the queued commands in any manner it selects. Any data integrity exposures related to command sequence order are explicitly handled by the initiator through the selection of appropriate commands and queue tag messages.

2h-7h : RESERVED.

8 : Command reordering is disabled

9-Fh : RESERVED

- **QErr (Queue Error Management)** specifies how the drive shall handle blocked tasks when another task receives a CHECK CONDITION status.

0h : The drive suspends execution of queued and active commands from any Initiator which receives a CHECK CONDITION status until pending sense data is cleared. Those commands still queued after the drive has returned CHECK CONDITION status, continue execution in a normal manner when the pending status is cleared.

1h : All active commands and all queued commands from all initiators are aborted when the drive returns the CHECK CONDITION status. A unit attention condition will be generated for each initiator which had commands in the queue except for the initiator that received the CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key will be set to UNIT ATTENTION and the additional sense code will be set to COMMANDS CLEARED BY ANOTHER INITIATOR.

2h : RESERVED

3h : All active commands and all queued commands from the initiator to which CHECK CONDITION status is sent are aborted when the drive returns the CHECK CONDITION status.

- **DQue** (Disable Queuing) of one specifies that tagged queuing is disabled. Any queue commands for that I\_T\_L nexus is aborted. Any subsequent queue tag message received is rejected with a MESSAGE REJECT message and I/O process is executed as an untagged command. A DQue of zero specifies that tagged queuing is enabled.
- **Ready AEN Holdoff Period** is ignored.
- **Busy Timeout Period** is ignored.
- **Extended Self-test Routine Completion Time** is the time in seconds that the drive requires to complete self-test when the drive is not interrupted by an initiator and no errors occur during execution of the self-test.

## 8.8.10 Mode Page 0C (Notch Parameters)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS = 1	RSVD= 0	Page Code = 0Ch					
1	Page Length = 16h							
2	ND = 1	LPN = 0	RSVD = 0					
3	Reserved = 0							
4	(MSB) Maximum Number of Notches = 011h (LSB)							
5								
6	(MSB) Active Notch (LSB)							
7								
8   11	(MSB) Starting Boundary (LSB)							
12   15	(MSB) Ending Boundary (LSB)							
16   23	(MSB) Pages Notched = 000000000000100Ch (LSB)							

Figure 95. Page 0C (Notch Parameters)

The notch page contains parameters for variable number of blocks per cylinder. Each section of the logical unit with a different number of blocks per cylinder is referred as a notch. The only field that is changeable is Active Notch field.

- **ND** of one means that the drive is a notched drive.
- **LPN** of zero means that the notches are based upon physical parameters of the drive (cylinder #), not logical parameters.
- **Maximum Number of Notches** is the number of notches the drive can support.
- **Active Notch** indicates to which notch subsequent MODE SELECT/SENSE command parameters pertain. A value of 0 is used for parameter values which apply to all notches. Values from 1 to the maximum value depending on the model specify the notch number, where notch 1 is the outermost notch. The following mode parameters are based on the current active notch:

Mode Page 2

- Read Buffer Full Ratio
- Write Buffer Empty Ratio

#### Mode Page 3

- Alternate Sector per Zone
- Alternate Track per Zone
- Alternate Track per Logical Unit
- Sector per Track
- Track Skew Factor
- Cylinder Skew Factor

- **Starting Boundary** contains the first physical location of the active notch. The first three bytes are the cylinder number and the last byte is the head. The value sent in this field is ignored.
- **Ending Boundary** contains the last physical location of the active notch. The first three bytes are the cylinder number and the last byte is the head. The value sent in this field is ignored.
- **Pages Notched** is a bit map of the mode page codes that indicates which pages contain parameters that may be different for different notches. The most significant bit of this field corresponds to page code 3Fh and the least significant bit corresponds to page code 00h. If a bit is one, the corresponding mode page contains parameters that may be different for different notches. If a bit is zero, the corresponding mode page contains parameters that are constant for all notches.

## 8.8.11 Mode Page 19 (Port Control)

### 8.8.11.1 Short Format of Port Control Page

Byte	Bit								Default	
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	PS	Long=0	Page Code = 019h							99h
1	Page Length = 06h									06h
2	Reserved									00h
3	Reserved				Protocol identifier = 1					01h
4		(MSB) Synchronous transfer timeout						(LSB)	00h	
5									00h	
6	Reserved									00h
7	Reserved									00h

Figure 96. Page 19 (Port Control parameters) Short format

The drive maintains an independent set of port control mode page parameters for each SCSI initiator port.

- **Protocol identifier** has a value of 1h to indicate SPI SCSI devices.
- **Synchronous Transfer Timeout** indicates the maximum amount that the drive waits before generating an error by doing an unexpected bus free (see Section 10.3, "Unit Attention" on page 190). The unit of time is 1 ms. The drive only goes to a BUS FREE phase if one of the following events causes the timer when started to not reset or reload before expiring.
  - If there is a REQ transition when there are no outstanding REQs waiting for an ACK, load and start the timer.
  - If there is a REQ transition when there are any outstanding REQs waiting for an ACK, there is no effect on the timer.
  - If there is an ACK transition when there are outstanding REQs waiting for an ACK, load and start the timer.
  - If after an ACK transition there are no outstanding REQs waiting for an ACK, stop the timer.

A value of 0000h in Synchronous Transfer Timeout indicates that the function is disabled. A value of FFFFh indicates an unlimited period.



### 8.8.11.2 Long Format of Port Control Page

Byte	Bit								Default
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	PS	Long=1	Page Code = 019h						39h
1	Subpage code								
2   3	(MSB) Page Length (n-3) (LSB)								00h   00h
4	Reserved								00h
5	Reserved				Protocol identifier = 1h				01h
6 n	Protocol Specific Mode Parameters								

Figure 97. Page 19 (Port Control Parameters) Long Format

The drive maintains an independent set of port control mode page parameters for each SCSI initiator port.

- **Subpage Code** indicates which subpage is being accessed. The drive supportst the following subpage codes. If the Subpage Code is not supported, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status, the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and the additional sense code is set to ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
  - 01h: Margin Control Subpage
  - 02h: Saved Training Configuration Values Subpage
  - 03h: Negotiated Settings Subpage
  - 04h: Report transfer Capabilities Subpage
- **Page Length** specifies the length in bytes of the subpage parameters after the Page Length.
- **Protocol Identifier** has a value of 1h to indicate SPI SCSI devices.

### 8.8.11.3 Margin Control Subpage

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RSVD							
1	Driver Strength				Reserved			
2	Driver Asymmetry				Driver Precompensation			
3	Driver Slew Rate				Reserved			
4   6	Reserved							
7	Vendor specific							
8   15	Reserved							

Figure 98. Margin Control Subpage

The margin control subpage contains parameters that set and report margin control values for usage between the initiator and the drive on subsequent synchronous and paced transfers. MODE SENSE command returns the current settings for the initiator.

- **Driver Strength** indicates the relative amount of driver source current used by the driver. The Driver Strength field affects both the strong and weak drivers. A larger value indicates more driver source current.
- **Driver Precompensation** indicates the relative difference between the weak driver and the strong driver amplitudes when precompensation is enabled. A larger value indicates a larger difference between the weak and strong amplitudes.
- **Driver Asymmetry** indicates the relative difference between the amplitudes of asserted and negated signals launched from the driver. A larger value indicates a relatively stronger asserted signal compared to the negated signal.
- **Driver Slew Rate** indicates the relative difference between the assertion and negation magnitudes divided by the rise or fall time. A larger value indicates a faster slew rate.
- **Vendor Specific** is reserved and should be zero.

The default value of each margin control field should be 0000b.

The margin control fields indicate absolute conditions centered around their default values. The maximum supported setting for each field is 0111b and the minimum supported setting for each field is 1000b.

### 8.8.11.4 Saved Training Configuration Values Subpage

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-3	RSVD							
4-7	DB (0) Value							
64-67	DB (15) Value							
68-71	P_CRCA Value							
72-75	P1 Value							
76-79	BSY Value							
80-83	SEL Value							
84-87	RST Value							
88-91	REQ Value							
92-95	ACK Value							
96-99	ATN Value							
100-103	C/D Value							
104-107	I/O Value							
108-111	MSG Value							
112-227	RSVD							

Figure 99. Saved Training Configuration Subpage

The saved training configuration values subpage is used to report the saved training configuration values of the drive. These vendor specific values are maintained by the drive when the retain training information option is enabled.

### 8.8.11.5 Negotiated Settings Subpage

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Transfer Period Factor							
1	Reserved							
2	REQ/ACK Offset							
3	Transfer Width Exponent							
4	RSVD	Protocol Options Bits						
5	RSVD				Transceiver Mode		1	2
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

1: Sent PCOMP\_EN

2: Received PCOMP\_EN

Figure 100. Negotiated Settings Subpage

The negotiated settings subpage is used to report the negotiated settings of the drive for the current I\_T nexus.

- **Transfer Period Factor** indicates the negotiated Transfer Period Factor.
- **REQ/ACK Offset** indicates the negotiated REQ/ACK Offset.
- **Transfer Width Exponent** indicates the negotiated Transfer Width Exponent.
- **Protocol Options Bits** contain the negotiated protocol options except PCOMP\_EN.
- **Received PCOMP\_EN** contains the value of PCOMP\_EN received by the drive.
- **Send PCOMP\_EN** contains the value of PCOMP\_EN sent by the drive.
- **Transceiver Mode** specifies the current bus mode of the drive as defined below:
  - 00b: Not used
  - 01b: Single Ended
  - 10b: Low Voltage Differential
  - 11b: High Voltage Differential

### 8.8.11.6 Report Transfer Capabilities Subpage

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Minimum Transfer Period Factor							
1	Reserved							
2	Maximum REQ/ACK Offset							
3	Maximum Transfer Width							
4	Protocol Options Bits Supported							
5-7	Reserved							

---

Figure 101. Report Transfer Capabilities Subpage

The report transfer capabilities subpage is used to report the transfer capabilities of the drive. The values in this subpage are not changeable via a MODE SELECT command.

- **Minimum Transfer Period Factor** is set to the smallest value of the Transfer Period Factor supported by the drive which is 08h.
- **Maximum REQ/ACK Offset** is set to the largest value of the REQ/ACK Offset supported by the drive which is 127.
- **Maximum Transfer Width Exponent** is set to the largest value of the Transfer Width Exponent supported by the drive which is 01h.
- **Protocol Options Bits Supported** indicates the protocol options supported by the drive which is FFh.

## 8.8.12 Mode Page 1A (Power Control Parameters)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RSVD	RSVD	Page Code = 1Ah					
1	Page Length = 0Ah							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved						[Idle]	Standby
4   7	(MSB)	Idle Condition Timer						(LSB)
8   11	(MSB)	Standby Condition Timer						(LSB)

Figure 102. Page 1A (Power Control)

- **Idle** and **Idle Condition Timer** are ignored.
- **Standby** of one indicates that the drive uses Standby Condition Timer to determine the length of inactivity time to wait before unloading the actuator. Spindle motor is not stopped. Next media access command load the actuator. Idle time function does not load the actuator. A Standby of zero indicates that the drive does not unload the actuator.
- **Standby Condition Timer** specifies the inactivity time in increments of 100 ms. The minimum allowable inactivity time is 60 minutes. Any value less than this is accepted, but will automatically default to 60 minutes.

### 8.8.13 Mode Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)

Byte	BIT								Default							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0								
0	PS	RSVD=0	Page Code = 1Ch							9Ch						
1	Page Length = 0Ah									0Ah						
2	[PERF]	RSVD	[EBF]	EWASC	DEXCPT	TEST	RSVD	[LOGERR]	00h							
3	Reserved				Method of Reporting					00h						
4	Interval Timer									00h						
5									(MSB)							00h
6																00h
7															(LSB)	00h
8	Report Count									00h						
9									(MSB)							00h
10																00h
11															(LSB)	00h

Figure 103. Page 1C (Informational Exceptions Control)

- **LOGERR** (Log Errors) is ignored.
- **EWASC** (Enable Warning ASC) of one enables Temperature Warning (sense key 01h, additional sense code 0Bh, and additional sense code qualifier 01h) when the temperature reading exceeds Temperature Threshold (Mode Page 0). The reporting is controlled by DEXCPT and Method of Reporting. EWASC of zero disables Temperature Warning.
- **DEXCPT** (Disable Exception Control) of one disables all information exception operations. DEXCPT of zero enables information exception operations. The reporting of information exception conditions when DEXCPT bit is set to zero is determined by Method of Reporting.
- **TEST** of one instructs the drive to generate false information exception at the next interval time, as determined by Interval Timer if DEXCPT is set to zero. Method of Reporting and Report Count would also apply. The false drive failure is reported with an additional sense qualifier of FFh. TEST of zero instructs the drive to stop generating false information exception.
- **EBF** (Enable Background Function) is ignored.
- **PERF** (Performance) is ignored.
- **Method of Reporting** indicates the methods used by the drive to report informational exception conditions.

**Code**      **Description**

**0h**      **No reporting of informational exception condition:** This method instructs the drive to not report informational exception condition.

**1h**      **Asynchronous event reporting:** Not supported.

**2h**      **Generate unit attention:** This method instructs the drive to report informational exception conditions by returning a CHECK CONDITION status on any command. The sense key

is set to UNIT ATTENTION and the additional sense code indicates the cause of the informational exception condition. The command that has the CHECK CONDITION is not executed before the informational exception condition is reported.

**3h**      **Conditionally generate recovered error:** This method instructs the drive to report informational exception conditions, if PER (Mode Page 1) is set to one, by returning a CHECK CONDITION status on any command. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR and the additional sense code indicates the cause of the informational exception condition. The command that has the CHECK CONDITION completes without error before any informational exception condition is reported.

**4h**      **Unconditionally generate recovered error:** This method instructs the drive to report informational exception conditions, regardless of PER (Mode Page 1), by returning a CHECK CONDITION status on any command. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR and the additional sense code indicates the cause of the informational exception condition. The command that has the CHECK CONDITION completes without error before any informational exception condition is reported.

**5h**      **Generate no sense:** This method instructs the drive to report informational exception conditions by returning a CHECK CONDITION status on any command. The sense key is set to NO SENSE and the additional sense code indicates the cause of the informational exception condition. The command that has the CHECK CONDITION completes without error before any informational exception condition is reported.

**6h**      **Only report informational exception condition on request:** This method instructs the drive to preserve the informational exception(s) information. To find out about informational exception conditions the initiator polls the drive by issuing an unsolicited REQUEST SENSE command. The sense key is set to NO SENSE and the additional sense code indicates the cause of the informational exception condition.

**7h-Fh**      Reserved.

- **Interval Timer** indicates the period in 100 millisecond increments for reporting that an informational exception condition has occurred. The drive will not report informational exception conditions more frequently than the time specified by the Interval Timer. After the informational exception condition has been reported Interval Timer is restarted. A value of zero in interval Timer indicated that the drive only reports the informational exception condition one time.
- **Report Count** indicates the number of times the drive reports an informational exception condition. Report Count of 0 indicates no limits on the number of times the drive reports an informational exception condition..



## 8.9 MODE SENSE (10) (5Ah)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 5Ah							
1	Reserved = 0		RSVD	DBD	Reserved = 0			
2	PCF		Page Code					
3	Subpage Code							
4	Reserved = 0							
5	Reserved = 0							
6	Reserved = 0							
7-8	(MSB)		Allocation Length				(LSB)	
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 104. MODE SENSE (10)

The MODE SENSE (10) command provides a means for the drive to report various device parameters to the initiator. See Section 8.8, "MODE SENSE (6)(1A)" on page 80 for a description of the fields in this command.

## 8.10 MODE SELECT (6) (15h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 15h							
1	Reserved = 0		PF=1	Reserved = 0			SP	
2 3	Reserved = 0							
4	Parameter List Length							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 105. MODE SELECT (6)

The MODE SELECT (6) command provides a means for the initiator to specify LUN or device parameters to the drive. It also allows an Initiator to specify options the drive uses in error recovery and caching.

There is a single set of Mode Page parameters shared by all initiators.

- **PF** (Page Format) bit value of one indicates that the data sent by the Initiator after the Mode Select Header and the Block Descriptor, if any, complies to the Page Format. The drive ignores this field since it accepts only mode parameters in the Page Format.
- **SP** Pages. This indicates
  - 0 The drive shall not save the pages sent during the DATA OUT phase but will use them for all following commands until the power is removed, a reset is received, or a new MODE SELECT command is received.
  - 1 The drive will save the data in the reserved area of the disk. It will be used for all the following commands until another MODE SELECT command is issued. This information is maintained over a power cycle or reset of the drive.
- **Parameter List Length** specifies the number of bytes to be sent from the initiator. A parameter list length of zero suppresses data transfer and is not considered as an error.

The MODE SELECT parameter list contains a four-byte header which is followed by zero or one block descriptor followed by zero or more pages. The pages which are valid with this command are defined in Sections 8.8.2 to 8.8.13 beginning on page 85.

### Application Note

The initiator should issue a MODE SENSE command requesting all Changeable values (see PCF field in byte two of the CDB in Section 8.8, "Mode Sense (6)(1A)" on page 80) prior to issuing a MODE SELECT command. This is necessary to find out which pages are implemented by the drive and the length of those pages. In the Pages of the MODE SENSE command the drive will return the number of bytes supported for each Page. The Page Length set by the initiator in the MODE SELECT command must be same value as returned by the drive in MODE SENSE Page Length. If not, the drive will return CHECK CONDITION status with sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST.

**Note:** If an initiator sends a MODE SELECT command that changes any parameters that apply to other initiators, the drive generates a unit attention condition for all initiators except for the one that issued the MODE SELECT command. The drive shall set the additional sense code to PARAMETERS CHANGED (2Ah).

## 8.11 MODE SELECT (10) (55h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 55h							
1	Reserved = 0		PF=1	Reserved = 0			SP	
2   6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Parameter List Length							(LSB)
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 106. MODE SELECT (10)

The MODE SELECT (10) command provides a means for the initiator to specify LUN or device parameters to the drive. See the MODE SELECT (6) command for a description of the fields in this command.

## 8.12 PERSISTENT RESERVE IN (5Eh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 5Eh							
1	Reserved = 0			Service Action				
2   6	Reserved = 0							
7   8	(MSB) Allocation Length							(LSB)
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 107. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN

When the drive receives a PERSISTENT RESERVATION IN command and RESERVE(6) or RESERVE(10) logical unit is active, the command is rejected with a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

PERSISTENT RESERVATION IN command does not conflict with a reservation established by the PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command.

### 8.12.1 Service Action

The drive implements the following service action codes. If a reserved service action code is specified, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense data is set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Code	Name	Descriptions
00h	Read Keys	Reads all registered Reservation Keys
01h	Read Reservations	Reads all current persistent reservations
02h-1Fh	Reserved	Reserved

Figure 108. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN Service Action Codes

## 8.12.2 Parameter data for Read Keys

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   3	(MSB) Generation (LSB)							
4   7	(MSB) Additional length (n-7) (LSB)							
8   15	(MSB) First reservation key (LSB)							
:								
n-7   n	(MSB) Last reservation key (LSB)							

Figure 109. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN parameter data for Read Keys

- **Generation** is a counter which increments when PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command with “Register” or “Preempt and Clear” completes successfully. Generation is set to 0 as part of the power on reset process and hard reset process.

## 8.12.3 Parameter data for Read Reservations

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   3	(MSB) Generation (LSB)							
4   7	(MSB) Additional length (n-7) (LSB)							
8   n	(MSB) Reservation descriptors (LSB)							

Figure 110. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN parameter data for Read Reservations

## 8.12.4 Parameter data for Read Reservation Descriptor

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   7	(MSB) Reservation key (LSB)							
8   11	(MSB) Scope-specific address (LSB)							
12	Reserved							
13	Scope				Type			
14   15	(MSB) Extent length (LSB)							

Figure 111. PERSISTENT RESERVE IN Read Reservation Descriptor

- **Scope-specific address** is filled with 0.
- **Scope** and **Type** are described in PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT command section.
- **Extent length** is filled with 0.

## 8.13 PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT (5Fh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 5Fh							
1	Reserved = 0			Service Action				
2	Scope				Type			
3	Reserved = 0							
4								
5								
6								
7	(MSB) Parameter List Length = 18h							(LSB)
8								
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK		

Figure 112. Persistent Reserve Out (5F)

When a drive receives a PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command and RESERVE(6) or RESERVE(10) logical unit is active, the command is rejected with a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

- **Parameter List Length** must be 18h. If not, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION status. And the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense data is set to PARAMETER LIST LENGTH ERROR

### 8.13.1 Service Action

The drive implements service action codes as follows. If a code which is not supported or a reserved code is specified, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense data is set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB. In case of PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command executing a Register service action, this field is ignored.

Code	Name	Description	Support
00h	Register	Register a reservation key with the drive	Yes
01h	Reserve	Create a persistent reservation using a reservation key	Yes
02h	Release	Release a persistent reservation	Yes
03h	Clear	Clear all reservation keys and all persistent reservations	No
04h	Preempt	Preempt persistent reservations from another initiator	No
05h	Preempt and Abort	Preempt persistent reservations from another initiator and abort the task set for the preempted initiator	Yes
06h	Register and Ignore Existing Key	Register a reservation key with the drive	Yes
07h - 1Fh	Reserved	Reserved	---

Figure 113. Persistent Reservation Service Action Code

**Register** This service action may conflict with a successfully established persistent reservation.

If the key specified in the Reservation Key field is not registered yet, a key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key is registered as new key. If the key is already registered but the initiator which registered the key is different from the initiator requesting the command, the drive returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status. If the key is already registered and the key is for the initiator requesting the command, the key is replaced with new key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key field.

The drive holds up to four keys at the same time. When four keys are already registered, PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command with Register service action which does not replace an existing key is rejected with RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

When PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command with Register service action completes successfully, the Generation counter is incremented.

When keys are registered, the drive returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status against the RESERVE command and the RELEASE command.

**Reserve** This service action does not conflict with a successfully established persistent reservation.

If the initiator has not previously performed a Register service action, the command with this service action is rejected with RESERVATION CONFLICT status.



If the key specified in the Reservation key field is already registered but the initiator which registered the key is different from the initiator requesting the command, the drive returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

If persistent reservation that is being attempted conflicts with persistent reservation that is held, the drive returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

The established persistent reservation applies to all commands received after the successful completion of the command.

**Release** This service action may conflict with a successfully established persistent reservation.

If the initiator requesting the command has not previously performed a Register service action, the command is rejected with a status of RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

If the key specified in the Reservation key field is already registered but the initiator which registered the key is different from the initiator requesting the command, the drive returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

The drive returns GOOD status when a key specified in Reservation key field is not found.

When the key is found but the scope is different from the registered scope or the type is different from the registered type, the command is rejected with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense data is set to INVALID RELEASE OF ACTIVE PERSISTENT RESERVATION.

### **Preempt and Abort**

This service action does not conflict with a successfully established persistent reservation.

If the initiator requesting the command has not previously performed a Register service action, the command is rejected with a status of RESERVATION CONFLICT.

If the key specified in the Reservation key field is already registered but the initiator which registered the key is different from the initiator requesting the command, the drive returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

Even if the key specified in the Service Action Reservation key field is not registered, the drive makes new persistent reservation without preempting if it does not conflict with an existing persistent reservation.

When the key is registered but reservation for the key is nothing yet and the new persistent reservation does not conflict with an existing persistent reservation, the drive makes new persistent reservation and clears the key and all commands from the initiator which was registered the key.

When the key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key is cleared even if a reservation for the key is nothing yet, the drive makes UNIT ATTENTION condition for the initiator which was registered the key. The sense key is set to UNIT ATTENTION and the additional sense data is set to RESERVATION PREEMPTED.

When PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command with this service action completes successfully, the Generation counter is incremented.

### **Register and Ignore Existing Key**

This service action does not conflict with a successfully established persistent reservation.

The key specified in the Reservation Key field is ignored, and a key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key is registered as new key, regardless of whether or not a key has been already registered.

When PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT command with Register and Ignore Existing Key service action completes successfully, the Generation counter is incremented.

When keys are registered, the drive returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status against the RESERVE command and the RELEASE command.

### 8.13.2 Scope

The drive implements scope codes as follows. If a code which is not supported or a reserved code is specified, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense data is set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB. In case of PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command executing a Register service action, this field is ignored.

Code	Name	Description	Support
0h	LU	Persistent reservation applies to the full logical unit	Yes
1h	obsolete		- - -
2h	Element	Persistent reservation applies to the specific element	No
3h - Fh	Reserved	Reserved	---

Figure 114. Persistent Reservation Scope Code

### 8.13.3 Type

The drive implements type codes as follows. If a code which is not supported or a reserved code is specified, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code is set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Code	Name	Support	RD	WR	NWR	Add Rsv
0h	Read Shared	No	---	---	---	---
1h	Write Exclusive	Yes	SH	EX	PH	A1
2h	Read Exclusive	No	---	---	---	---
3h	Exclusive Access	Yes	EX	EX	PH	A1
4h	Shared Access	No	---	---	---	---
5h	Write Exclusive Registrants Only	Yes	SH	EO	PH	A2
6h	Exclusive Access Registrants Only	Yes	EO	EO	PH	A2
7h - Fh	Reserved	---	---	---	---	---

Figure 115. Persistent Reservation Type Code

- RD** READ (6) command and READ (10) command
- WR** WRITE (6) command and WRITE (10) command
- NWR** Commands except the following:
- READ (6) command and READ (10) command
  - WRITE (6) command and WRITE (10) command
  - RESERVE and RELEASE command
- If any key is registered, the drive returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.
- PERSISTENT RESERVE IN command and PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT command
- SH** SHared: The drive executes the command from all initiators.
- EX** EXclusive: The drive executes the command from initiator which holds the persistent reservation and rejects the command from the other initiators with RESERVATION CONFLICT status.
- PH** ProHibited: The drive rejects the command from all initiators.
- EO** Exclusive registrant Only: The drive executes the command from initiator which has registered a key and rejects the command from the other initiators with RESERVATION CONFLICT status.
- A1** The drive rejects new PERSISTENT RESERVATION on any types and returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status.
- A2** The drive accepts new PERSISTENT RESERVATION with Write Exclusive Registrants Only type and Exclusive Access Registrants Only type. The drive rejects new PERSISTENT RESERVATION with Write Exclusive type and Exclusive Access type and returns RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

New Type	1	3	5	6
Write Exclusive (1)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Exclusive Access (3)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Write Exclusive Registrants Only (5)	Yes	Yes	No	No
Exclusive Access Registrants Only (6)	Yes	Yes	No	No

Figure 116. Conflict between new and existing PERSISTENT RESERVATION

## 8.13.4 Parameter list

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   7	(MSB) Reservation Key (LSB)							
8   15	(MSB) Service Action Reservation Key (LSB)							
16   19	(MSB) Scope-specific address (LSB)							
20	Reserved						APTPL	
21	Reserved							
22   23	(MSB) Extent length (LSB)							

Figure 117. PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT parameter list

## 8.13.5 Summary

Service Action	Parameters						Gener- ation counter
	Scope Type	Rsv Key	SvcAct RsvKey	S-spec addr	Extent length	APTPL	
(0) Register	ignore	verify	save	ignore	ignore	apply	+ 1
(1) Reserve	apply	verify	ignore	ignore	ignore	ignore	---
(2) Release	apply	verify	ignore	ignore	ignore	ignore	---
(5) Preempt and Clear	apply	verify	save	ignore	ignore	ignore	+ 1

Figure 118. Service Action and parameters and generation counter

### 8.13.5.1 Scope, Type

The Scope and the Type are applied in the process for the Reserve, Release, and Preempted and Abort service action but they are ignored in the process for the Register service action because they are not used.

### 8.13.5.2 Reservation Key

The Reservation Key is verified in each service action process. If the initiator which registered a key is different from the initiator requesting PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command, the drive returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

### 8.13.5.3 Service Action Reservation Key

On Register service action, the drive saves the key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key field as a key of initiator requesting PERSISTENT RESERVATION OUT command.

On Preempt and Clear service action, the reservation which has a key specified in the Service Action Reservation Key field is preempted.

On other service actions, this field is ignored.

### 8.13.5.4 Scope-specified address

Parameter in the Scope-specified address field is ignored by the drive.

### 8.13.5.5 Extent length

Parameter in the Extent length field is ignored by the drive.

### 8.13.5.6 APTPL

The APTPL (Active Persist Through Power Loss) is valid only for the Register service action. The drive ignores the APTPL in other service actions.

The following table shows the relationship between the last valid APTPL value and information held by the drive.

---

Information held by the drive	The last valid APTPL value	
	0	1
Registration	all keys are set to 0	retained
Persistent Reservation	all are removed	retained
Generation counter	set to 0	set to 0

---

Figure 119. APTPL and information held by a drive

### 8.13.5.7 Generation counter

The drive increments the Generation counter when Register service action or Preempt and Abort service action complete successfully.

## 8.14 PRE-FETCH (34h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 34h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			Immed = 0	RelAdr = 0
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 120. Pre-Fetch

The PRE-FETCH command requests the drive to transfer data to the cache. No data is transferred to the initiator.

- **Transfer length** specifies the number of contiguous blocks of data that are to be transferred into the cache. A transfer length of zero indicates that blocks are to be transferred into the cache until the segment is filled or until there are no more blocks on the media.
- **Immed** (Immediate) must be zero. An immediate bit of zero indicates that the status shall not be returned until the operation has completed. If the Immed bit is set to one, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD in CDB.
- **RelAdr** (Relative Block Address) is not supported and must be set to zero.

---

## 8.15 READ (6) (08h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 08h							
1	Reserved = 0		(MSB)			LBA		
2	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
3								
4	Transfer Length							
5	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 121. READ (6)

The READ command requests the drive to transfer the specified number of blocks of data to the initiator starting at the specified logical block address.

- **Logical block address** specifies the LBA at which the read operation shall begin.
- **Transfer length** specifies the number of blocks to be transferred. A value of zero implies 256 blocks are to be transferred.

**Note:** Errors are handled by ERP (error recovery procedure). Rep's are controlled by the error recovery parameters specified by MODE SELECT command.

## 8.16 READ (10) (28h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 28h							
1	Reserved = 0		DPO	FUA	Reserved = 0		RelAdr = 0	
2   5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 122. READ (10)

The READ (10) command requests the drive to transfer data to the initiator. The larger Logical Block Address and Transfer Length fields permit greater quantities of data to be requested per command than with the READ (6) command and are required to access the full LBA range of the larger capacity drives.

- **Transfer length** The number of contiguous blocks to be transferred. If the transfer length is zero, the seek occurs, but no data is transferred. This condition is not considered an error. If read ahead is enabled, a read ahead is started after the seek completes.
- **DPO** A DPO (Disable Page Out) bit of one indicates that the data accessed by this command is to be assigned the lowest priority for being written into or retained by the cache. A DPO bit of one overrides any retention priority specified in the MODE SELECT Page 8 Caching Parameters. A DPO bit of zero indicates the priority is determined by the retention priority. The initiator should set the DPO bit when the blocks read by this command are not likely to be read again in the near future.
- **FUA** Force Unit Access. A FUA bit of one indicates that the data is read from the media and not from the cache. A FUA bit of zero allows the data to be read from either the media or the cache.
- **RelAdr** Relative Block Address is not supported. Must be set to zero.



## 8.17 READ BUFFER (ACH)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 3Ch							
1	Reserved = 0				Mode			
2	Buffer ID = 0							
3	(MSB) Buffer Offset (LSB)							
4								
5								
6	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
7								
8								
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 123. READ BUFFER

- **READ BUFFER** command is used in conjunction with the WRITE BUFFER command as a diagnostic function for testing the memory of the drive and the SCSI bus integrity. This command does not alter the medium.

The function of this command and the meaning of fields within the command descriptor block depend on the contents of the mode field:

MODE	Description
<b>0000</b>	Read Combined Header and Data
<b>0010</b>	Data
<b>0011</b>	Descriptor
<b>1010</b>	Read Data from Echo Buffer
<b>1011</b>	Echo Buffer Descriptor
<b>All others</b>	Not supported.

### 8.17.1 Combined Header And Data (Mode 0000b)

In this mode a four byte header followed by data bytes are returned to the initiator during the DATA IN phase. The Buffer ID and the buffer offset field are reserved.

The drive terminates the DATA IN phase when allocation length bytes of header plus data have been transferred or when the header and all available data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

The four-byte READ BUFFER header (see figure below) is followed by data bytes from the data buffer of the drive.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RSVD = 0							
1	(MSB) Buffer Capacity (LSB)							
2								
3								

Figure 124. READ BUFFER Header

The buffer capacity specifies the total number of data bytes that are available in the data buffer of the drive. This number is not reduced to reflect the allocation length nor is it reduced to reflect the actual number of bytes written using the WRITE BUFFER command.

Following the READ BUFFER header the drive will transfer data from its data buffer.

### 8.17.2 Read Data (Mode 0010b)

In this mode, the DATA IN phase contains buffer data.

- **Buffer ID** field must be set to zero, indicating the data transfer buffer. If another value is specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Buffer Offset** specifies the offset of the memory space specified by the Buffer ID. The initiator should conform to the offset boundary requirements returned in the READ BUFFER descriptor. If the value exceeds the buffer specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Allocation Length** The drive terminates the DATA IN phase when allocation length bytes of data have been transferred or when the header and all available data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

### 8.17.3 Descriptor (Mode 0011b)

In this mode, a maximum of four bytes of READ BUFFER descriptor information are returned. The drive returns the descriptor information for the buffer specified by the Buffer ID.

- **Buffer ID** field should normally be set to zero indicating the drive data transfer buffer. If any other value is specified, the drive returns all zeros in the READ BUFFER descriptor.
- **Buffer Offset** field is reserved.

- **Allocation Length** must be set to four or greater. The drive transfers the allocation length or four bytes of READ BUFFER descriptor, whichever is less. The READ BUFFER descriptor is defined in the figure below.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Offset Boundary							
1	(MSB) Buffer Capacity (LSB)							
2								
3								

Figure 125. Read Buffer Descriptor

The value contained in the Buffer Offset field of subsequent WRITE BUFFER and READ BUFFER commands should be a multiple of two to the power of the offset boundary. The offset boundary is always set to nine, which indicates Sector Boundaries.

#### 8.17.4 Read Data from Echo Buffer (Mode 1010b)

In this mode the drive transfers data from the echo buffer. The echo buffer will transfer the same data as when the WRITE BUFFER command was issued with the mode field set to echo buffer.

WRITE BUFFER command with the mode field set to echo buffer should be sent prior to the READ BUFFER command; otherwise the READ BUFFER command will be terminated with Check Condition ILLEGAL REQUEST.

#### 8.17.5 Echo Buffer Descriptor (Mode 1011b)

In this mode, a maximum of four bytes of READ BUFFER Descriptor information is returned. The drive returns the descriptor information for the echo buffer. The Buffer Offset field is reserved in this mode and must be zero. The drive transfers the lesser of the allocation length or four bytes of following Echo Buffer Descriptor.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved = 0							EBOS= 0
1	Reserved = 0							
2	Reserved = 0				(MSB) Buffer Capacity			
3	Buffer Capacity							(LSB)

Figure 126. Echo Buffer Descriptor

- **EBOS** (Echo Buffer Overwritten Supported) bit of zero indicates that the echo buffer is shared by all initiators.
- **Buffer Capacity** field returns the size of the echo buffer in byte aligned to a four-byte boundary.

## 8.18 READ CAPACITY (25h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 25h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				RelAdr = 0
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address							(LSB)
6 7	Reserved = 0							
8	Reserved = 0							PMI
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 127. READ CAPACITY

The READ CAPACITY command returns information regarding the capacity of the drive.

- **Logical Block Address** is used in conjunction with the PMI bit.

• **RelAdr** A Relative Address is not supported. Must be set to zero.

• **PMI** Partial Medium Indicator indicates

**PMI Description**

0 The drive returns the last logical block address of the drive.

1 The drive returns the last logical block address and block length in bytes are that of the logical block address after which a substantial delay in data transfer will be encountered. This returned logical block address shall be greater than or equal to the logical block address specified by the logical block address fields in the command descriptor block.

This option provides the information which the initiator needs to determine the amount of space available on the same track which is accessible without a head switch or seek.

### 8.18.1 Returned Data Format

The data returned to the initiator in response to the READ CAPACITY command is described here. The data is returned in the DATA IN phase.

---

Byte	Bit							
	6	7	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
1								
2								
3								
4	(MSB) Block Length (LSB)							
5								
6								
7								

---

Figure 128. Format of READ CAPACITY command reply

- **Block Length** specifies the length in bytes of the block.

## 8.19 READ DEFECT DATA (10) (37h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 37h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				0
2	Reserved = 0			P-list	G-List	Defect List Format		
3	Reserved = 0							
4								
5								
6								
7	(MSB) Allocation Length							(LSB)
8								
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 129. Read Defect Data (10)

The READ DEFECT DATA command requests that the drive transfer the medium defect data to the initiator.

If the drive is unable to access any medium defect data it will return a CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate sense key. The sense key will be set to either MEDIUM ERROR(03h) if a medium error occurred or NO SENSE(00h) if the list does not exist and the additional sense code will be set to DEFECT LIST ERROR (19h).

- **P-list** (Primary Defect List) bit set to one indicates that the drive returns the primary list of defects. A P-list bit of zero indicates that the drive shall not return the Primary Defect list of defects.
- **G-list** (Grown Defect List) bit set to one indicates that the drive returns the Grown Defect List. A G-List bit of zero indicates that the drive shall not return the Grown Defect List of defects.

**Note:** With both bits set to one P-list and G-List the drive will return both the Primary and Grown defect lists. With both bits set to zero, the drive will return only a four-byte Defect List Header.

- **Defect List format** is used by the initiator to indicate the preferred format for the defect list.

The Defect List Format of '100 (Bytes from Index Format)' and '101 (Physical Sector Format)' are supported. If the requested format is not supported by the drive, it will return the defect list in its default format '101' and then terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key will be set to RECOVERED ERROR(01h) and the additional sense code will be set to DEFECT LIST NOT FOUND(1Ch).

The drive will transfer all of the Read Defect Data up to the number of bytes allocated by the initiator.

**Note:** The drive will terminate the Data In phase when the Allocation Length has been transferred or when all available Defect Data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

The Read Defect Data contains a four byte header followed by zero or more defect descriptors.

## 8.19.1 Defect List Header

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	Defect List Header							
0	Rsvd = 0							
1	Reserved = 0		P-list	G-List	Defect List Format			
2	Defect List length							
3	(MSB)							(LSB)

Figure 130. Defect List Header

## 8.19.2 Bytes from Index Format (100b)

Byte	Defect Descriptors
0	(MSB)
1	Cylinder Number of Defect
2	
3	Head Number of Defect
4	(MSB)
5	Defect Bytes from Index
6	
7	

Figure 131. Defect Descriptors of Bytes from Index Format

Defect Bytes from Index is derived by the following equation:

$$\text{Bytes from Index} = (\text{Physical Sector Number}) * N$$

where N = bytes per sector

### 8.19.3 Physical Sector Format (101b)

---

Byte	Defect Descriptors
0	(MSB)
1	Cylinder Number of Defect
2	(LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect
4	(MSB)
5	Defective Sector Number
6	
7	(LSB)

---

Figure 132. Defect Descriptors of Physical Sector Format

The Defect List Format field specifies the format of the defect list data returned by the drive.

The Defect List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the defect descriptors that follow. The Defect List Length is equal to eight times the number of defect descriptors.

Normally the drive will set the Defect List Length field to the amount of space needed to contain the entire defect list. However, the drive is capable of building a defect list with a such length that the entire list cannot be transferred using the maximum allocation length. If the defect list grows beyond 8191 entries, the defect data cannot be transferred with an allocation length of 0FFFFh. The drive will transfer a partial defect list and return CHECK CONDITION status with the sense key set to RECOVERED ERROR and the Additional Sense Code is set to PARTIAL DEFECT LIST TRANSFERRED. The defect list length will be set to 0FFF8h, indicating the maximum number of defect descriptors which can be transferred. Defects beyond this number can not be read by the initiator.



## 8.20 READ DEFECT DATA (12) (B7h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = B7h							
1	Reserved = 0		P-list	G-List	Defect List Format			
2	Reserved = 0							
3								
4								
5								
6	(MSB)		Allocation Length				(LSB)	
9								
10	Reserved = 0							
11	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 133. Read Defect Data (12)

The READ DEFECT DATA command requests that the drive transfer the medium defect data to the initiator.

If the drive is unable to access any medium defect data it will return a CHECK CONDITION status with the appropriate sense key. The sense key will be set to either MEDIUM ERROR (03h) if a medium error occurred or to NO SENSE (00h) if the list does not exist and the additional sense code will be set to DEFECT LIST ERROR (19h).

- **P-list** (Primary Defect List) bit set to one indicates that the drive returns the primary list of defects. A P-list bit of zero indicates that the drive does not return the Primary Defect list of defects.
- **G-List** (Grown Defect List) bit set to one indicates that the drive returns the grown defect list. A G-List bit of zero indicates that the drive does not return the Grown Defect list of defects.

**Note:** With both bits set to one P-list and G-List the drive will return both the Primary and Grown defect lists. With both bits set to zero the drive will return only a four-byte Defect List Header.

- **Defect List format** is used by the initiator to indicate the preferred format for the defect list.

The Defect List Format of '100 (Bytes from Index Format)' and '101 (Physical Sector Format)' are supported. If the requested format is not supported by the drive, it will return the defect list in its default format '101' and then terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key will be set to RECOVERED ERROR (01h) and the additional sense code will be set to DEFECT LIST NOT FOUND (1Ch).

The drive will transfer all of the Read Defect Data up to the number of bytes allocated by the initiator.

**Note:** The drive will terminate the Data In phase when the Allocation Length has been transferred or when all available Defect Data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

The Read Defect Data contains a four byte header, followed by zero or more defect descriptors.

## 8.20.1 Defect List Header

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	<b>Defect List Header</b>							
0	Rsvd = 0							
1	Reserved = 0		P-list	G-List	Defect List Format			
2 3	Rsvd = 0							
4   7	(MSB)		Defect List length				(LSB)	

Figure 134. Defect List Header

## 8.20.2 Bytes from Index Format (100b)

Byte	Defect Descriptors
0 1 2	(MSB) Cylinder Number of Defect (LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect
4 5 6 7	(MSB) Defect Bytes from Index (LSB)

Figure 135. Defect Descriptors of Bytes from Index Format

Defect Bytes from Index is derived using the following equation:

$$\text{Bytes from Index} = (\text{Physical Sector Number}) * N$$

where N = Bytes per sector

## 8.20.3 Physical Sector Format (101b)

---

Byte	Defect Descriptors
0 1 2	(MSB) Cylinder Number of Defect (LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect
4 5 6 7	(MSB) Defective Sector Number (LSB)

---

Figure 136. Defect Descriptors of Physical Sector Format

The Defect List Format field specifies the format of the defect list data returned by the drive.

The Defect List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the defect descriptors that follow. The Defect List Length is equal to eight times the number of defect descriptors.

If the Allocation Length is insufficient to transfer all of the defect descriptors, the Defect List Length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation. The drive does not create a CHECK CONDITION status.

## 8.21 READ LONG (3Eh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 3Eh							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			CORT = 0	RelAdr = 0
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Byte Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 137. READ LONG

The READ LONG command requests the drive to transfer one block of data to the initiator. The transfer data includes data and ECC field data.

- **CORT** bit of ZERO causes the logical block to be read without any correction made by the drive. A CORT bit of one is not supported by the drive. (A corrected bit of one causes the data to be corrected by ECC before transferring the data to the initiator.)
- **Logical Block Address** field specifies the logical block at which the read operation shall occur.
- **Byte Transfer Length.** This field must specify exactly the number of bytes of data that are available for transfer. If a non-zero byte transfer length does not match the available data length, the drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and an additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The valid and ILI bits is set to one and the information field is set to the difference of the requested length minus the actual length in bytes. Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation.

The transfer length is calculated as follows:

$$\text{transfer length} = \text{logical block size} + 44$$

- **RelAdr** Relative Block Address is not supported by the drive.

---

## 8.22 REASSIGN BLOCKS (07h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 07h							
1	Reserved = 0				Reserved = 0			
2	Reserved = 0							
3								
4								
5	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 138. REASSIGN BLOCKS

The REASSIGN BLOCKS command requests the drive to reassign a logical block to an available spare. The REASSIGN BLOCKS command attempts to allocate spare blocks on a spare track. The logical block address is transferred to the drive during the DATA OUT phase. One to four blocks may be specified for relocation per REASSIGN BLOCKS command.

Reassignment is complete upon the completion of the REASSIGN BLOCKS command. At this time the defective logical block address has been added to the grown (G-List) defect list.

Data contained at the logical block address being reassigned is preserved or filled with a constant pattern depending on DRRT(Mode Page 0).

Following is the format of the data sent by the initiator during the DATA OUT phase

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RSVD = 0							
1	RSVD = 0							
2 3	(MSB) Defect list length = 4/8/12/16 (LSB)							
4 5 6 7	(MSB) Defect Logical Block Address -1 (LSB)							
8 9 10 11	(MSB) Defect Logical Block Address -2 (LSB)							
12 13 14 15	(MSB) Defect Logical Block Address -3 (LSB)							
16 17 18 19	(MSB) Defect Logical Block Address -4 (LSB)							

Figure 139. Format of REASSIGN BLOCKS data

- **Defect List Length** must be 4, 8, 12, or 16. Otherwise, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION with Sense key = ILLEGAL REQUEST.
- **Defective Logical Block Address** is 4 bytes in length. The initiator can specify from 1 to 4 Defective Logical Block Addresses according to the Defect List Length from 4 to 16, respectively. Defective Logical Block Addresses must be ordered in ascending order, otherwise the drive returns CHECK CONDITION.

## 8.23 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS (1Ch)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 1Ch							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				PCV
2	Page Code							
3	(MSB)			Parameter List Length				(LSB)
4								
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK

Figure 140. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC

The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command requests that analysis data requested by a SEND DIAGNOSTICS command be sent to the initiator.

- **PCV** (Page Code Valid) bit of zero indicates that the most recent SEND DIAGNOSTIC command shall define the data returned by this command. PCV bit of one indicates that the contents of the Page Code field shall define the data returned by this command.
- **Parameter List Length** specifies the amount of data to be returned to the initiator. This value may be zero and this is not considered an error. The drive terminates the DATA IN phase when all available data has been transferred or when the number of bytes transferred equals the Parameter List Length.

### 8.23.1 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 0

This page contains a list of supported pages.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 0							
1	Reserved = 0							
2-3	Page Length = 03h							
4	First supported page 0h							
5	Second supported page 40h							
6	Third supported page 80h							

Figure 141. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 0

## 8.23.2 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 40

Using the SEND DIAGNOSTICS command, an address in either physical or logical format is supplied to the drive. This page is then used to retrieve the address translated into the other format.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 40h							
1	Reserved = 0							
2-3	Page Length = 0Ah							
4	Reserved = 0					Supplied format		
5	RA	ALTS	ALTT	Reserved=0		Translate format		
6-13	Translated Address							

Figure 142. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 40

- **Supplied Format** is the value supplied by the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command; it may be one of the three following values:

- **000b** Block format
- **100b** Bytes From Index format
- **101b** Physical Sector format

It specifies the format in which the address has been supplied.

- **Translate Format** is the value supplied by the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command and specifies the format in which the address has been translated into List. If the supplied format is the Block format, the Translate format must be either Bytes from Index or Physical Sector format. If the supplied format is the Bytes from Index or Physical Sector format, the Translate format must be Block format. Otherwise the drive will terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status.
- **RA (Reserved Area)** is set to one if the translated block is a reserved area.
- **ALTS (Alternate Sector)** is set to one if the translated block is in alternate sector area.
- **ALTT (Alternate Track)** is set to one if the translated block is in alternate track area. This bit is not used by the drive.



- **Translated Address** contains the address in the translate format. If it is a logical block address, it is contained within the first four bytes of the field (bytes 6 to 9) of the page data. For a physical format it is as follows:

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
6-8	Cylinder Number							
9	Head Number							
0-13	Sector Number or Bytes from Index							

Figure 143. Translated address

### 8.23.3 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 80

This page contains the off-line read scan status.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 80h							
1	Reserved = 0							
2-3	Page Length = 04h							
4	SMART Revision = 03h							
5	Off-line Read Scan Ratio							
6 7	(MSB) Estimated Completion Time							

Figure 144. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Page 80

- **Off-line Read Scan Ratio** indicates the progress of the read scan activity. The number is the numerator of a fraction whose denominator is 100.
- **Estimated Completion Time** indicates the total time in seconds to complete a full read scan without interruption.

---

## 8.24 RELEASE (6) (17h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 17h							
1	Reserved = 0		3rdPty	3rd Party ID			Ext=0	
2	Reservation Identification							
3 4	Reserved = 0							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 145. RELEASE (6)

The RELEASE command is used to release a LUN previously reserved. It is not an error for an Initiator to attempt to release a reservation that is not currently active. In this case the drive returns a GOOD status.

Extents are not supported by the drive. The Ext (Extent) bit must be zero. If Ext bit is not zero, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Reservation Identification is ignored.

If the 3rdPty bit is one, the drive releases the LUN, but only if the reservation was made using the third-party reservation option and the 3rd Party ID is the ID of the Initiator that made the reservation.

## 8.25 RELEASE (10) (57h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 57h							
1	Reserved = 0		3rdPty	Reserved = 0			Ext = 0	
2	Reservation Identification							
3	3rd Party Device ID							
4	Reserved = 0							
5	Reserved = 0							
6	Reserved = 0							
7	Reserved = 0							
8	Reserved = 0							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 146. RELEASE (10)

The RELEASE command is used to release a LUN previously reserved. It is not an error for an Initiator to attempt to release a reservation that is not currently active. In this case the drive returns a GOOD status.

Extents are not supported by the drive. The Ext (Extent) bit must be zero. If the Ext bit is not zero, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Reservation Identification is ignored.

If the 3rdPty bit is one, the drive releases the LUN, but only if the reservation was made using the third-party reservation option and the 3rd Party ID is the ID of the Initiator that made the reservation

## 8.26 REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER (A3h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = A3h							
1	Reserved = 0				Service Action = 05h			
2	Reserved = 0							
3	Reserved = 0							
4	Reserved = 0							
5	Reserved = 0							
6   9	(MSB)		Allocation Length				(LSB)	
10	Reserved = 0							
11	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG		LINK

Figure 147. REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER

The REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER command requests that the drive send device identification information to the application client.

The ALLOCATION LENGTH field indicates how much space has been reserved for the returned parameter data. If the length is not sufficient to contain all the parameter data, the first portion of the data is returned. This is not considered an error. The actual length of the parameter data is available in the IDENTIFIER LENGTH field in the parameter data. If the remainder of the parameter data is required, the application client should send a new REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER command with an ALLOCATION LENGTH field large enough to contain all the data.

The REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER parameter list contains a four-byte field that contains the length in bytes of the parameter list and the identifier of the logical unit.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   3	(MSB) Identifier Length = n-3 (LSB)							
4 n	Identifier							

Figure 148. REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER parameter list

The IDENTIFIER LENGTH field specifies the length in bytes of the IDENTIFIER field. If the ALLOCATION LENGTH field in the CDB is too small to transfer all of the identifier, the length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation. The identifier length initially equals zero, and is changed only by a successful SETDEVICE IDENTIFIER command.

The IDENTIFIER field contains a vendor specific value. The value reported is the last value written by a successful SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER command. The value of the identifier is changed only by a SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER command. The identifier value persist through resets, power cycles, media format operations.

The drive returns the same Identifier to all initiators on all ports.

The execution of a REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER requires the enabling of a nonvolatile memory within the logical unit. If the nonvolatile memory is not ready, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION status, rather than wait for the device to become ready. The sense key is set to NOT READY and the additional sense data is set as described in the TEST UNIT READY command. This information should allow the application client to determine the action required to cause the drive to become ready.

## 8.27 REPORT LUN (A0h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = A0h							
1   5	Reserved							
6   9	(MSB)	Allocation Length						(LSB)
10	Reserved							
11	VU = 0		Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK

Figure 149. REPORT LUN

The REPORT LUN command requests that the drive return the known Logical Unit Numbers (LUN) to the initiator. The Report LUN command should always be available and is unaffected by any reservations.

The Allocation Length must be at least 16 bytes. If the Allocation Length is less than 16 bytes, the drive will return in CHECK CONDITION status with Sense Key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional Sense Code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If the Allocation Length is not sufficient to contain the Logical Unit Number values for all configured logical units, the drive shall report as many logical unit number values as will fit in the specified Allocation Length. This is not considered an error.

The Report LUN command will send the LUN List in the subsequent DATA OUT Phase. The format of the LUN List is shown in the following table.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0   3	(MSB)	LUN List Length = 8						(LSB)
4   7	Reserved							
8   15	(MSB)	LUN = 0						(LSB)

Figure 150. LUN Reporting Parameter List Format

The LUN list length contains the length in bytes of the LUN list that is available to be transferred. The drive supports only one LUN. Therefore the LUN list length must be set to 8. The only supported LUN is zero.

## 8.28 REQUEST SENSE (03h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 03h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				
2 3	Reserved = 0							
4	Allocation Length							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 151. REQUEST SENSE

The REQUEST SENSE command requests the drive to transfer sense data.

The sense data shall be available under the following conditions:

- The previous command to the specified I\_T\_L nexus<sup>4</sup> terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. All other information (e.g. medium position) is available in any fields.
- The previous command to the specified I\_T\_L nexus ended unexpected BUS FREE error.

If REQUEST SENSE command with an invalid LUN is received, the drive returns GOOD status and reports a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an additional sense code of LOGICAL UNIT NOT SUPPORTED.

If the drive has no sense data available to return, it shall return a sense key of NO SENSE and an additional sense code of NO ADDITIONAL SENSE INFORMATION.

The sense data shall be preserved by the drive for the initiator until retrieved by the REQUEST SENSE command or until any other command for the same I\_T\_L nexus. Sense data shall be cleared upon receiving a subsequent command including REQUEST SENSE to the same I\_T\_L nexus.

Separate sense data is maintained by the device for each initiator. Therefore, there is no requirement for an initiator to expeditiously clear a CHECK CONDITION as this will not affect other initiators in a multi-initiator system.

The drive will return the number of bytes in the allocation length or 32 bytes whichever is less.

The contents of the sense data is defined in Section 12.0, "SCSI Sense Data" on page 215.

<sup>4</sup> A nexus which exists between an initiator, a drive, and a logical unit.

## 8.29 RESERVE (6) (16h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 16h							
1	Reserved = 0		3rdPty	3rd Party ID			Ext = 0	
2	Reservation Identification							
3 4	(MSB)		Extent List Length = 0				(LSB)	
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 152. RESERVE (6)

The RESERVE command is used to reserve a LUN for an initiator. This reservation can be either for the initiator which sends this command or for the third party as specified by the Initiator.

Extents are not supported by the drive. The Ext bit must be zero. If Ext bit is set to one, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Reservation Identification and Extent List Length fields are ignored.

The RESERVE command requests that the entire LUN be reserved for the Initiator until

- the reservation is superseded by another valid RESERVE command from the initiator that made the reservation.
- the reservation is released by a RELEASE command from the same initiator.
- a hard Reset condition occurs.
- a DRIVE RESET message is received from any initiator.
- a power off/on occurs.

The 3rdPty bit of zero indicates that the Initiator that issued the RESERVE command is the Initiator for which the LUN is reserved.

The 3rdPty bit of one indicates that this is a third-party reservation. The 3rd Party ID byte specifies the ID of the third party for which the LUN is reserved. A reservation made with the 3rdPty bit of one and the 3rd Party ID byte set to the Initiator that issued this RESERVE command is considered equivalent to a reservation made with the 3rdPty bit set to zero.

Only the Initiator that issued the RESERVE command for a LUN may release the LUN, regardless of the 3rdPty option. This Initiator may also release the LUN by issuing another RESERVE command. This superseding RESERVE command releases the previous reservation when the new reservation is granted.

Reservation queuing is not supported by the drive. If a LUN is reserved and a RESERVE command is issued from a different initiator, the drive responds with a RESERVATION CONFLICT.



## 8.30 RESERVE (10) (56h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 57h							
1	Reserved = 0		3rdPty	Reserved			Ext = 0	
2	Reservation Identification							
3	Third Party Device ID							
4	Reserved = 0							
5	Reserved = 0							
6	Reserved = 0							
7	(MSB) Extent List Length = 0							(LSB)
8								
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 153. RESERVE (10)

The RESERVE command is used to reserve a LUN for an Initiator. This reservation can be either for the Initiator sending the command or for a third party as specified by the Initiator.

Extents are not supported by the drive. The Ext bit must be zero. If Ext bit is set to one, CHECK CONDITION Status is returned with a Sense Key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD in CDB

The Reservation Identification and Extent List Length fields are ignored.

The RESERVE command requests that the entire LUN be reserved for the Initiator until

- the reservation is superseded by another valid RESERVE command from the Initiator that made the reservation.
- the reservation is released by a RELEASE command from the same Initiator.
- a hard Reset condition occurs.
- a TARGET RESET message is received from any Initiator.
- a power off/on cycle occurs.

The 3rdPty bit of zero indicates that the Initiator that issued the RESERVE command is the Initiator for which the LUN is reserved.

The 3rdPty bit of one indicates that this is a third-party reservation. The 3rd Party ID byte specifies the ID of the third party for which the LUN is reserved. Only the Initiator that issued the RESERVE command for a LUN may release the LUN, regardless of the 3rdPty option. This Initiator may also release the LUN by issuing another RESERVE command. This superseding RESERVE command releases the previous reservation when the new reservation is granted.

Reservation queuing is not supported by the drive. If a LUN is reserved and a RESERVE command is issued from a different initiator, the drive responds with a RESERVATION CONFLICT.

---

## 8.31 REZERO UNIT (01h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 01h							
1	Reserved = 0				Reserved = 0			
2	Reserved = 0							
3								
4								
5	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 154. REZERO UNIT

The REZERO UNIT command requests that the drive seek logical block address 0.

---

## 8.32 SEEK (6) (0Bh)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 0Bh							
1	Reserved = 0		(MSB) LBA					
2 3	Logical Block Address							(LSB)
4	Reserved = 0							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 155. SEEK (6)

The SEEK command requests the drive to seek the specified logical block address.

## 8.33 SEEK EXTENDED (10) (2Bh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 2Bh							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				0
2	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
3								
4								
5								
6	Reserved = 0							
7								
8								
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 156. SEEK (10)

The SEEK (10) command requests the drive to seek the specified logical block address.

## 8.34 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 1Dh							
1	Function Code		PF	RSVD=0	SlfTst	Dev0fl	Unt0fl	
2	Reserved = 0							
3 4	(MSB)		Parameter List Length				(LSB)	
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 157. SEND DIAGNOSTIC

The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command requests the drive to perform its self-diagnostic test or to perform a function based on a page of information sent in a Data Out phase during the command.

- **PF (Page Format)** bit set to one indicates the data sent by the Initiator conforms to the page structure as specified in SCSI-2 standard. This bit must be set to one if the SlfTst bit is set to zero. This bit is ignored by the drive if the SlfTst bit is set.
- **SlfTst** set to one indicates that the device performs its internal self test. If SlfTst is one, Function code field is ignored. If SlfTst is set to zero, the content of Function code is specified in Function code field values.

Value	Function Name	Description
000b	NA	Value to be used when the slfTst bit is set to one or if The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command is not invoking one of the other self-test function codes.
001b	Background Short self-test	The drive starts its short self-test routine in background mode.
010b	Background extended self-test	The drive starts its extended self-test routine in background mode.
011b	NA	Reserved
100b	Abort background self-test	Abort the current self-test in the background mode. This value is only valid if a previous SEND DIAGNOSTIC command specified a background self-test function and that function has not been completed.
101b	Foreground short self-test	The drive starts its short self-test routine in the foreground mode.
110b	Foreground extended self-test	The device server starts its extended self-test routine in the foreground mode.
111b		Reserved

Figure 158. SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1D)

- **DevOfI** is ignored by the drive for compatibility.
- **UntOfI** is ignored by the drive for compatibility.
- **Parameter List Length** must be 0 when the SlfTst bit is one. Otherwise, CHECK CONDITION status will be generated with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense of INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If the SlfTst bit is zero, it should be set to the length of the page to be transferred in the DATA OUT phase of the command. If it does not match the expected length of the page a CHECK CONDITION status will be also generated with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the motor is not running at the correct speed when the command is received, it is rejected by a CHECK CONDITION status with a NOT READY sense key.

If a fault is detected during the default or foreground self-test, a CHECK CONDITION is reported as an end status. If a fault is detected during the background self-test, it is logged in the log page for later retrieval by a LOG SENSE command.

See Section 11.17, "Diagnostics" on page 212 for detailed listing of operations carried out by SEND DIAGNOSTIC command and Power on Diagnostics.

### 8.34.1 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Page 0

This page requests that the drive return a list of supported pages on the next RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS command.

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 0							
1	Reserved = 0							
2 - 3	Page Length = 0							

---

Figure 159. Diagnostic Page 0

### 8.34.2 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Page 40

This allows the initiator to translate a logical block address or physical sector address to the other format. The address to be translated is passed to the drive with the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command and the results are returned to the initiator by the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS command.

The drive will read the parameter list from the initiator and, if no errors are detected in the parameter list, GOOD Status will be returned. The data translation will be performed upon receipt of the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command.

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 40h							
1	Reserved = 0							
2-3	Page Length = 0Ah							
4	Reserved = 0					Supplied format		
5	Reserved = 0					Translate format		
6-13	Address to Translate							

---

Figure 160. Diagnostic Page 40

**Supplied Format** may take one of the following three values:

- **000b** Block format
- **100b** Bytes From Index format
- **101b** Physical Sector format

It specifies the format in which the address has been supplied.

- **Translate Format** specifies the format that the address should be translated into. If the supplied format is the Block format, the Translate format must be either Bytes from Index or Physical Sector format. If the supplied format is the Bytes from Index or Physical Sector format, the Translate format must be Block format. If either of the format fields is invalid or they specify the same format, the command will terminate with CHECK CONDITION status with a Sense of ILLEGAL REQUEST and ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

- **Address to Translate** contains the address to translate. If the logical block format is specified, the first four bytes of the field (bytes 6 to 9) contain the LBA and the remainder must be zero. For the physical format the address must be specified as follows.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
6-8	Cylinder Number							
9	Head Number							
10-13	Sector Number or Bytes from Index							

Figure 161. Address to translate

### 8.34.3 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Page 80

This requests the drive to perform off-line read scan.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code = 80h							
1	Reserved = 0							
2-3	Page Length = 04h							
4	SMART Revision = 03h							
5	Reserved = 0							
6 7	(MSB) Off-line Immediate Time						(LSB)	

Figure 162. SEND DIAGNOSTIC Page 80

- **Off-line Immediate Time** specifies the delay to start the off-line read scan in seconds. When this value is zero, the drive immediately starts the off-line read scan.



## 8.35 SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER (A4h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = A4h							
1	Reserved = 0				Service Action = 06h			
2	Reserved = 0							
3								
4								
5								
6   9	(MSB) Parameter List Length						(LSB)	
10	Reserved = 0							
11	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG		LINK

Figure 163. SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER

The SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER command requests that the device identifier information be set to the value received in the SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER parameter list.

On successful completion of a SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER command a unit attention is generated for all initiators except the one that issued the service action. When reporting the unit attention condition the additional sense code is set to DEVICE IDENTIFIER CHANGED.

- **Parameter List Length** field specifies the length in bytes of the Identifier that is transferred from the host system to the drive. The maximum value for this field is 512 bytes. A parameter list length of zero indicates that no data is transferred, and that subsequent REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER commands return an Identifier length of zero.

The SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER parameter list contains the identifier to be set by the addressed logical unit.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 n	Identifier							

Figure 164. SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER Parameter List

The IDENTIFIER field is a vendor specific value to be returned in subsequent REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER commands.

## 8.36 START STOP Unit (1Bh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 1Bh							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			Immed	
2 3	Reserved = 0							
4	Power Conditions = 0			Reserved = 0		LoEj = 0	Start	
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 165. START STOP Unit

The START STOP UNIT command is used to spin up or stop the spindle motor.

- **Immed** bit is to specify
  - 0** status is to be returned at the end of the operation
  - 1** GOOD status shall always be returned immediately after command has been received. The TEST UNIT READY command may be used to determine when the drive becomes ready after a spin-up.
- **Power Conditions** is not supported by the drive and must be set to 0.
- **LoEj** is not supported by the drive and must be set to 0.
- **Start** bit is to specify:
  - 0** stop the spindle
  - 1** start the spindle

**Note:** When the drive has become ready (after a power on), the START STOP UNIT command can be used without any errors regardless of whether the motor is stopped or spinning.

## 8.37 SYNCHRONIZE CACHE (35h)

Byte	BIT							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 35h							
1	Reserved = 0		Reserved = 0			Immed = 0	RelAdr = 0	
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB)							
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 166. SYNCHRONIZE CACHE

The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE Command ensures that logical blocks in the cache have their most recent data value recorded on the media.

- **Logical Block Address** is to specify where the operation is to begin.
- **Number of Blocks** specifies the total number of contiguous logical blocks within the range. Number of Blocks of zero indicates that all remaining logical blocks on the logical unit shall be within the range.
- **Immed** (immediate) must be zero. An immediate bit of zero indicates that the status shall not be returned until the operation has completed. If the Immed bit is set to one, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- **RelAdr** (Relative Address) must be zero. The drive does not support the relative addressing. If the RelAdr bit is set to one, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

---

## 8.38 TEST UNIT READY (00h)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 00h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0				
2	Reserved = 0							
3								
4								
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK

---

Figure 167. TEST UNIT READY

The TEST UNIT READY command allows the initiator to check if the drive is READY. The SCSI specification defines READY as the condition where the device will accept a media-access command without returning CHECK CONDITION status.

The drive will first verify that the motor is spinning at the correct speed. If the spindle motor is not spinning at the correct speed, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with sense key of NOT READY. If the motor is spinning at the correct speed, the drive accepts normal media access commands.

The TEST UNIT READY command is not intended as a diagnostic. No self diagnostic is performed by the device as a result of this command.

The TEST UNIT READY command has special significance for power sequencing using the START STOP UNIT command with an Immediate bit of one. In this mode the START STOP UNIT command returns TASK COMPLETE status before the completion of motor spin-up and expects the initiator to issue TEST UNIT READY commands to determine when the motor has reached the proper speed.

**Note:** The spindle automatically starts in automatic spin-up Mode. The drive does not execute any commands other than TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, or REQUEST SENSE command until the Power On sequence is complete. The drive will return CHECK CONDITION status with NOT READY sense key and IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY sense code for all other commands during the Power On period.

## 8.39 VERIFY (2Fh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 2Fh							
1	Reserved = 0		DO	Rsvd = 0		Byte Chk	RSVD=0	
2	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
3								
4								
5								
6	Reserved = 0							
7	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
8								
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 168. VERIFY

The VERIFY command requests that the drive verify the data written on the media. A verification length of zero indicates that no data will be transferred. This condition is not considered an error.

- **ByteChk** bit set to zero indicates that the data is read from the disk and verified using ECC. If an ECC error is detected in the verify process, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with sense key set to MEDIUM ERROR. ByteChk bit set to one indicates that byte-by-byte comparison is performed between the data on the disk and data transferred from the initiator during the data-out phase.

If the comparison is unsuccessful, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the sense key is set to MISCOMPARE.

- **DO** (Disable Page Out) bit of one indicates that the data accessed by this command is to be assigned the lowest priority for being written into or retained by the cache. A DO bit of one overrides any retention priority specified in the MODE SELECT Page 8 Caching Parameters. A DO bit of zero indicates that the priority is determined by the retention priority. The initiator should set the DO bit when the blocks read by this command are not likely to be read again in the near future.

---

## 8.40 WRITE (6) (0Ah)

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 0Ah							
1	Reserved = 0		(MSB) LBA					
2 3	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
4	Transfer Length							
5	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

---

Figure 169. WRITE (6)

The WRITE command requests the drive to write the specified number of blocks of data from the initiator to the medium starting at the specified logical block address.

### Logical block address

This field specifies the LBA at which the write operation shall begin.

### Transfer length

This field specifies the number of blocks to be transferred. A value of zero implies 256 blocks are to be transferred.

## 8.41 WRITE (10) (2Ah)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 2Ah							
1	Reserved = 0		DPO	FUA	Reserved		RelAdr = 0	
2   5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 170. WRITE (10)

The WRITE (10) command requests that the drive write the data transferred from the initiator. This command is processed like the WRITE (6) command except for the longer transfer length

- **Transfer Length** The number of contiguous blocks to be transferred. If the transfer length is zero, the seek occurs, but no data is transferred. This condition is not considered an error.
- **DPO** A DPO (Disable Page Out) bit of one indicates that the data accessed by this command is to be assigned the lowest priority for being written into or retained by the cache. A DPO bit of one overrides any retention priority specified in the MODE SELECT Page 8 Caching Parameters. A DPO bit of zero indicates that the priority is determined by the retention priority. The Initiator should set the DPO bit when the blocks written by this command are not likely to be read in the near future.
- **FUA** Force unit access. A FUA bit of one indicates that the drive must write the data to the media before returning GOOD status. A FUA bit of zero indicates that the drive may return GOOD status prior to writing the data to the media.
- **RelAdr** Relative Block Address is not supported and must be set to zero.

## 8.42 WRITE AND VERIFY (2Eh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 2Eh							
1	Reserved = 0		DPO	Reserved = 0		Byte Chk	RelAdr = 0	
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 171. WRITE AND VERIFY

WRITE AND VERIFY command requests that the drive writes the data transferred from the initiator to the medium and then verify that the data is correctly written.

- **Transfer Length** of zero indicates that no data is transferred.

If caching is enabled, the command performs an implied Force Unit Access (FUA) and an implied Synchronize Cache before starting the operation. This insures that the medium, not the cache, is being verified.

- **ByteChk** bit set to zero indicates that the data is read back from the disk and verified using ECC after the successful write operation. If an ECC error is detected in the verify process, CHECK CONDITION status is returned with sense key set to MEDIUM ERROR. ByteChk bit set to one indicates that byte-by-byte comparison is performed between data on the disk starting the block specified in LBA field and data transferred from the initiator.

If the comparison is unsuccessful, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the sense key is set to MISCOMPARE.

- **DPO** (Disable Page Out) bit of one indicates that the data written by this command is to be assigned the lowest priority for being written into or retained by the cache. A DPO bit of one overrides any retention priority specified in the Mode Select Page 8 Caching parameters. A DPO bit of zero indicates the priority is determined by the retention priority.

The initiator should set the DPO bit when the blocks written by this command are not likely to be read again in the near future.

- **Relative Block Address** is not supported. Must be set to zero.



## 8.43 WRITE BUFFER (3Bh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 3Bh							
1	Reserved = 0				Mode			
2	Buffer ID							
3	(MSB) <span style="float:right">(LSB)</span> Buffer Offset							
4								
5								
6	(MSB) <span style="float:right">(LSB)</span> Parameter List Length							
7								
8								
9	VU = 0	Reserved = 0				FLAG	LINK	

Figure 172. WRITE BUFFER (3B)

The WRITE BUFFER command is used in conjunction with the READ BUFFER command as a diagnostic function for testing the memory of the drive and the SCSI bus integrity. This command does not alter the medium of the drive. Additional modes are provided for downloading microcode and for downloading and saving microcode.

This command will cause the entire cache to be emptied.

The function of this command and the meaning of fields within the command descriptor block depend on the contents of the mode field.

<b>MODE</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>0000</b>	Write combined header and data
<b>0010</b>	Data
<b>0100</b>	Download Microcode
<b>0101</b>	Download Microcode and Save
<b>0111</b>	Download Microcode and Save (Single Binary Chunked)
<b>1010</b>	Write Data to Echo Buffer

No other modes are supported by the drive.

### 8.43.1 Combined Header And Data (Mode 0000b)

In this mode, the data to be transferred is preceded by a four-byte header.

- **Buffer ID** must be zero. If another value is specified, no download function is performed and the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. And the drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Buffer Offset** must be zero. If another value is specified, no download function is performed and the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. And the drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Parameter List Length** specifies the number of bytes that shall be transferred during the DATA OUT phase. This number includes four bytes of header, so the data length to be stored in the drive buffer is transfer length minus four. If the length exceeds the buffer size, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. And the drive shall set sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.

The four-byte header consists of all reserved bytes.

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved = 0							
1	Reserved = 0							
2	Reserved = 0							
3	Reserved = 0							

---

Figure 173. WRITE BUFFER Header

### 8.43.2 Write Data (Mode 0010b)

In this mode the DATA OUT phase contains buffer data.

- **Buffer ID** must be set to zero, indicating the data transfer buffer. If another value is specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional the sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Buffer Offset** specifies the offset of the memory space specified by the Buffer ID. The initiator should conform to the offset boundary requirements returned in the READ BUFFER descriptor. If the value exceeds the buffer specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Parameter List Length** specifies the Parameter List Length. It must be less than the capacity of the buffer size and on a sector boundary.

If an invalid value is specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.

### 8.43.3 Download Microcode (Mode 0100b)

In this mode the microcode is transferred to the control memory space of the drive. When it is downloaded, the drive will operate with the newly downloaded code immediately until the next power cycle.

- **Buffer ID** field is used to indicate which portion of the microcode image is being downloaded. The following Buffer IDs are supported by the drive:
  - 00h : Main Microprocessor Code
  - 81h : Reserved Area Data

Any other value for the Buffer ID will cause the command to terminate with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.

- **Buffer Offset** must be zero. If an invalid value is specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.
- **Parameter List Length** must be the size of the data set to be downloaded. It may also be set to 0000h in which case no code is updated. If an invalid value is specified, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.

This process generates a unit attention condition for MICROCODE HAS BEEN CHANGED for all initiators except the one which sent the write buffer command. Upon the completion of the write buffer command the new microcode is immediately ready for operation.

**Note:** The Download Microcode mode described in this specification is to indicate that the drive will accept a command with this mode, though it is not expected that a user will ever issue such a command. To use the WRITE BUFFER command with this mode, a special microcode version is required from development. If such a microcode is released from development, then it will include appropriate instructions on the function of new microcode and its effect on the drive operations after download.

**Note:** If the WRITE BUFFER command with this mode is executed and the invalid code is downloaded, then it is to be expected that the drive will never be complete or hang up the subsequent command. This condition is normally recoverable by a power on/off cycle, but there is no guarantee of it.

### 8.43.4 Download Microcode and Save (Mode 0101b)

In this mode the data is transferred to the drive to save into the reserved area on the disk. This is for functional upgrade and configuration change reflecting the user's requirements or the manufacturer's reason or both and it is stored in the media as a permanent copy. The newly downloaded code becomes effective after the drive issues and completes a self-initiated Power On Reset.

**Note:** It requires up to 30 seconds to update the microcode including the Flash ROM update.

**Note:** New code to be downloaded to the drive will be provided by development either by request of a customer for an additional function or as a result of a functional change by development. However please note that not all possible fixes or new functions can be applied to a drive in this manner and that there is a very high dependency on the level of ROM code contained within the drive. If an invalid code or a code not compatible with the ROM code is downloaded, the drive will usually reject this code and will continue normal operation. However there is a small possibility that an invalid code will be accepted. If this occurs, the unit usually becomes inoperable and will have to be returned to the manufacturer for recovery.

**Buffer ID** field is used to indicate which portion of the microcode image is being downloaded. The following Buffer IDs are supported by the drive:

- 00h : Main Microprocessor Code with all others in one (Single Binary or Chunked)
- 01h - 02h : Reserved
- 80h - 82h : Reserved

Any other value for the Buffer ID will cause the command to terminate with CHECK CONDITION status. The drive shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code to ILLEGAL FIELD IN CDB.

#### **8.43.4.1 Download Microprocessor Microcode and Save (Buffer ID = 00h)**

Two types of download function are supported: Single Binary Download and Single Binary Chunked.

**Buffer ID** is 00h. (Single Binary Download)

The first one is that the data set consist of all necessary code and tables in a one big data set. This is starting with the special header data followed by tables, RAM code, three Overlay codes, EEPROM data, and Flash-ROM code. (Flash-ROM code is optional depends on the card type and version if card has update capability.) This download function is available when the drive is running with full function (normal running) before this WRITE BUFFER is issued.

It requires up to 30 seconds to finish the command. After completion of this type of WRITE BUFFER command the drive will start as "Power on Reset" and running with newly downloaded code and configuration. Therefore the initiator may need special treatment for this drive.

**Buffer ID** is 00h. (Single Binary Chunked)

The second uses the same data set as the first (Single Binary). It separates one big binary file into segments of 32 KB and then issues a WRITE BUFFER command with ID=00 repeatedly with the same number as the segment. The last segment may be equal to or less than 32 KB. (For example, if the single binary drive size is 426 KB, there are 13 files of 32 KB. Thus 13 continuous WRITE BUFFER commands with Offset=00 should be issued.) After issuing continuous WRITE BUFFER for all segments, the drive behavior is the same as the single binary.

#### **8.43.5 Download Microcode and Save (Mode 0111b)**

**Buffer Offset** is 00h. (Single Binary Chunked Mode 7)

The third uses the same data set as the first (Single Binary). It separates one big binary file into segments of 32 KB and then issues a WRITE BUFFER command with Offset=00 repeatedly with the same number as the segment. The last segment may be equal to or less than 32 KB. (For example, if the single binary drive size is 426 KB, there are 13 files of 32 KB. Thus 13 continuous WRITE BUFFER commands with Offset=00 should be issued.) After issuing continuous WRITE BUFFER for all segments, the drive behavior is the same as the single binary.

#### **8.43.6 Write Data to Echo Buffer (Mode 1010b)**

In this mode the drive transfers data into the echo buffer. The echo buffer is assigned in the same manner by the drive as it would for a write operation. Data will be sent aligned on four-byte boundaries.

Upon successful completion of a WRITE BUFFER command the data will be preserved in the echo buffer unless there is an intervening command to any logical unit in which case it may be changed.

## 8.44 WRITE LONG (3Fh)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 3Fh							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			RelAdr = 0	
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Byte Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 174. WRITE LONG

The WRITE LONG command requests the drive to write **one block** of data transferred from the initiator. The transfer data must include

- User Data
- 44 bytes of ECC data

Parameters are

- **Logical Block Address** field specifies the logical block at which the write operation shall occur.
- **Byte Transfer Length.** This field must specify the exact number of bytes of data available for transfer. If a non-zero byte transfer length does not match the available data length, the drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, then the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and an additional sense code is set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The valid and ILI bits are set to one and the information field is set to the difference of the requested length minus the actual length in bytes. Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation.
- **RelAdr** (Relative Block Address) is not supported and must be set to ZERO.

## 8.45 WRITE SAME (41h)

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Code = 41h							
1	Reserved = 0			Reserved = 0			RelAdr = 0	
2 3 4 5	(MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	Reserved = 0							
7 8	(MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB)							
9	VU = 0		Reserved = 0			FLAG	LINK	

Figure 175. WRITE SAME (41)

The Write Same command instructs the drive to write a single block of data transferred to the drive from the initiator to a number of sequential logical blocks. This command is useful for writing large data areas without sending all of the data over the SCSI bus.

- **Logical Block Address** specifies the address at which the write begins. The Number of Blocks specifies the number of contiguous blocks to be written. If the number is zero, all of the remaining blocks on the specified Logical Unit are written.
- **RelAdr (Relative Block Address)** is not supported and must be set to be ZERO.

The data for this command is not retained in the cache.

## 9.0 SCSI Status Byte

Upon the completion of a command a status byte is sent to the initiator. Additional sense information may also be available depending on the contents of the status byte. The following section describes the possible values for the status byte and sense data. All Reserved fields (R) are set to zero.

Bit							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved = 0		Status Code					RSVD

Figure 176. SCSI Status Byte. Format of the SCSI STATUS byte.

STATUS BYTE	Description
<b>00h</b>	<b>GOOD</b> The command has been successfully completed.
<b>02h</b>	<b>CHECK CONDITION</b> An error, exception, or abnormal condition has been detected. The sense data is set by the drive. The REQUEST SENSE command should be issued to determine the nature of the condition.
<b>04h</b>	<b>CONDITION MET</b> This status is returned when an unlinked PRE-FETCH command has been successfully completed.
<b>08h</b>	<b>BUSY</b> This condition is returned when disconnect privilege is not granted while the drive is BUSY processing the other command for the other initiator. The normal initiator recovery action is to issue the command at a later time or to reissue the command and grant the disconnect privilege.
<b>10h</b>	<b>INTERMEDIATE</b> This status is returned for every command except PRE-FETCH command in a series of linked commands (except the last command), unless the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION, RESERVATION CONFLICT, or BUSY status. If INTERMEDIATE or INTERMEDIATE CONDITION MET status is not returned, the series of linked commands is terminated and the task is ended.
<b>14h</b>	<b>INTERMEDIATE CONDITION MET</b> This status is returned when a linked PRE-FETCH command has been completed, unless the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION, RESERVATION CONFLICT, or BUSY status. If INTERMEDIATE or INTERMEDIATE CONDITION MET status is not returned, the series of linked commands is terminated and the task is ended.
<b>18h</b>	<b>RESERVATION CONFLICT</b> This status is returned whenever a SCSI device attempts to access the drive and it has been reserved by another initiator. See Section 8.29, "Reserve (16)" on page 155.

**28h**

**QUEUE FULL**

This status indicates that the drive command queue is full. If a tagged command queuing feature is enabled and there is no room on the command queue, this status is returned when the initiator sends a command. For this status sense is not valid.



---

## 10.0 SCSI Message System

---

This chapter describes how the message system is implemented on the drive. Included is a functional description of the supported messages.

---

### 10.1 Supported Messages

The messages supported by the drive are listed in the figure below.

---

MESSAGE	CODE (hex)	Direction		Negate ATN before last ACK
TASK COMPLETE	00	IN		---
SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST	010301	IN	OUT	Yes
WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST*	010203	IN	OUT	Yes
PARALLEL PROTOCOL REQUEST	010604	IN	OUT	Yes
SAVE DATA POINTER	02	IN		---
RESTORE POINTERS	03	IN		---
DISCONNECT	04	IN	OUT	---
INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR	05		OUT	Yes
ABORT TASK SET	06		OUT	Yes
MESSAGE REJECT	07	IN	OUT	Yes
NO OPERATION	08		OUT	Yes
MESSAGE PARITY ERROR	09		OUT	Yes
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE	0A	IN		---
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (w/FLAG)	0B	IN		---
TARGET RESET	0C		OUT	Yes
ABORT TASK	0D		OUT	Yes
CLEAR TASK SET	0E		OUT	Yes
SIMPLE	20XX	IN	OUT	No
HEAD OF QUEUE	21XX		OUT	No
ORDERED	22XX		OUT	No
IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE*	2301	IN		---
IDENTIFY	80-FF	IN		---
IDENTIFY	80-FF		OUT	No

Key: IN = Drive to Initiator  
OUT = Initiator to Drive  
YES = Initiator shall negate ATN before last ACK of message  
NO = Initiator may or may not negate ATN before last ACK of message  
--- = Not applicable  
XX = Queue Tag  
\* = Wide SCSI Only

---

Figure 177. Supported Messages

If an unsupported message is received, the drive will send the MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator. If at the time the unsupported message is received a valid nexus exists, the drive will continue with the command. If no valid nexus exists, the drive will go to BUS FREE.

### 10.1.1 TASK COMPLETE (00h)

The drive sends this message to the initiator to indicate that the execution of a command has been terminated and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message the drive releases all bus signals and goes to BUS FREE phase.

### 10.1.2 SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (010301H)

Byte	Value	Description
0	01H	Extended message
1	03H	Extended message length
2	01H	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST code
3	M	Transfer period (M times 4 nanoseconds)
4	X	REQ/ACK offset

Figure 178. Synchronous Data Transfer Request.

A pair of SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (SDTR) messages shown in Figure are exchanged between an initiator and a drive to establish the synchronous data transfer mode between the two devices. The message exchange establishes the permissible transfer period and REQ/ACK offset for a synchronous data transfer between the two devices. The initiator may initiate a synchronous data transfer negotiation at any time after the LUN has been identified. A SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (SDTR) message exchange shall be initiated by a SCSI device whenever a previously arranged data transfer agreement may have become invalid. *The agreement becomes invalid after any condition which may leave the data transfer agreement in an indeterminate state such as after*

- a Power-on Reset
- a SCSI Bus Reset condition
- a Target Reset message

In addition a SCSI device may initiate a SDTR message exchange whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new data transfer agreement (either synchronous or asynchronous).

**M** The transfer period (M above) is the minimum time allowed between leading edges of successive REQ pulses and of successive ACK pulses to meet the device requirements for successful reception of data. The drive supports transfer period of 50, 100, and 200 ns. In addition to this, when the drive is working in LVD mode, it supports 25 ns transfer periods.

#### REQ/ACK Offset

**X** The ACK/REQ offset (X above) is the maximum number of REQ pulses allowed to be outstanding before the leading edge of its corresponding ACK pulses is received at the drive. A REQ/ACK offset value of zero indicates asynchronous data transfer mode. The drive supports REQ/ACK offset values in the range 0 through 127.

If ATN is negated before all bytes of a multiple-byte extended message are received, the drive will go to **BUS FREE** to signal a catastrophic error.

### 10.1.2.1 Synchronous Negotiation started by the Initiator

When the drive responds with REQ/ACK offset value of 0, the initiator shall use asynchronous data transfer mode.

**LVD mode.** The drive responds to each Initiator requested transfer period as shown below.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 09	Mt = 10	25	Fast-40
10 <= Mi <= 10	Mt = 10	25	Fast-40
11 <= Mi <= 12	Mt = 12	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	Mt = 25	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 50	Mt = 50	200	Fast-5
51 <= Mi <= 255	Mt = 50	(Asynch mode)	Asynch

Figure 179. Initiator Request/Drive Response (LVD mode)

**SE mode.** The drive responds to each Initiator requested transfer period as shown below.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 11	Mt = 12	50	Fast-20
12 <= Mi <= 12	Mt = 12	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	Mt = 25	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 50	Mt = 50	200	Fast-5
51 <= Mi <= 255	Mt = 50	(Asynch mode)	Asynch

Figure 180. Initiator Request/Drive Response (SE mode)

### 10.1.2.2 Synchronous Negotiation started by the drive

If the drive recognizes that negotiation is required, it sends a SDR message to the initiator with minimum transfer period on the current receiver mode. The drive interprets the initiator corresponding transfer period as shown in the figure below.

#### LVD mode

Initiator Request	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 09	Send Mt = 10 to negotiate	N/A
10 <= Mi <= 10	25	Fast-40
11 <= Mi <= 12	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 50	200	Fast-5
51 <= Mi <= 255	(Asynch mode)	Asynch

Figure 181. Target Response to Initiator's Transfer Period (LVD mode)

#### SE Mode

Initiator Request	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 11	Send Mt = 12 to negotiate	N/A
12 <= Mi <= 12	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 50	200	Fast-5
51 <= Mi <= 255	(Asynch mode)	Asynch

Figure 182. Drive Response to Initiator's Transfer Period (SE mode)

### 10.1.3 WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (010203H)

A pair of WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST messages is exchanged between an initiator and a drive to establish a data transfer width agreement between the two devices. The initiator may initiate a wide data transfer negotiation at any time after the LUN has been identified. The drive initiates a wide data transfer negotiation if the drive has not negotiated with the Initiator since the last time the drive was Reset (Power-on Reset, SCSI Bus Hard Reset, or TARGET RESET message).

Drive-initiated negotiation occurs either immediately following the COMMAND phase or immediately following the first reconnection. In either case negotiation occurs before any DATA phase between the drive and the initiator. The drive will negotiate the data transfer width agreement prior to negotiating the synchronous data transfer agreement. If a synchronous data transfer agreement is in effect when a WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message is received, the drive will reset the synchronous agreement to asynchronous mode.

The implied data transfer width agreement remains in effect until the drive is Reset (Power-on Reset, SCSI Bus "hard" Reset, or TARGET RESET message) or a new data transfer width agreement is negotiated. If a Reset occurs, the drive to eight-bit mode.

Byte	Value	Description
0	01H	Extended message
1	02H	Extended message length
2	03H	WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST code
3	E	Transfer width exponent

Figure 183. Wide Data Transfer Request.

**E** The Transfer Width Exponent (E) is two to the transfer width exponent bytes wide. Valid data transfer widths are 8 bits (E = 00h) and 16 bits (E = 01h). Values of E greater than 01h are reserved.

#### 10.1.3.1 Transfer Width Negotiation started by the Initiator

If the Initiator recognizes that negotiation is required and sends a WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message out, the drive responds by changing to the Message In phase and sending a WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message in to the Initiator prior to transferring any additional message bytes (or any other Information phase bytes) from the Initiator. This provides an interlock during the data transfer width negotiation.

The drive responds to each Initiator requested transfer width exponent as shown in the following table.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Data Transfer Width
E <sub>i</sub> = 00h	E <sub>t</sub> = 00h	8 Bit
E <sub>i</sub> > 00h	E <sub>t</sub> = 01h	16 Bit

Figure 184. Initiator Request/Target Response

If, after the Target response above the Initiator asserts the ATN signal and the first message received is either a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or a MESSAGE REJECT message, the drive negates the data transfer width agreement and goes to 8 bits mode. For the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR case the implied data

transfer width agreement is reinstated if the drive successfully retransmits the WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message to the Initiator. For any other message the drive completes negotiation and goes to the negotiated data transfer width.

### 10.1.3.2 Transfer Width Negotiation started by the drive

If the drive recognizes that negotiation is required, it sends a WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message to the Initiator with the transfer width exponent equal to 1 (E = 01h). The Initiator must respond by asserting the ATN signal prior to its release of ACK for the REQ/ACK handshake of the last byte of the WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message. This provides an interlock during the wide data transfer negotiation. If the Initiator does not assert the ATN signal, the drive goes to 8 bit mode. If the Initiator asserts the ATN signal, the drive changes to the MESSAGE OUT phase and receives a message from the initiator.

If the first message received is a WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message, the Target establishes the new data transfer mode. The Target interprets the Initiator corresponding transfer width exponent as shown in the following table.

---

Initiator Request	Target Data Transfer Width
Ei = 00h	8 Bit
Ei = 01h	16 Bit
Ei > 01h	(8 Bit)

---

Figure 185. Target Request to Initiator

If the first message received from the Initiator is either a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or a MESSAGE REJECT message, the drive goes to 8 bit data transfer mode. In the case of a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR, the wide data transfer negotiation is restarted if the drive successfully retransmits the WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message to the Initiator.

If the first message received from the Initiator is any other message, the Target goes to 8 bit data transfer mode. The Target assumes that the Initiator does not support wide data transfer and does not attempt to renegotiate with this Initiator.

The implied agreement for wide data transfer operation is not considered to exist by the Target until the Target leaves the MESSAGE OUT phase, implying that no parity error was detected. If the Target detects a parity error while attempting to receive the message from the Initiator, the Target goes to 8 bit data transfer mode. The Target will attempt to resume the wide data transfer negotiation by retrying the MESSAGE OUT phase.

**Note:** If during the MESSAGE IN phase of negotiations (either Target or Initiator started) ATN is asserted prior to transmission of the last byte of the message and the message is not MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or MESSAGE REJECT, the drive goes to 8-bit data transfer mode.

## 10.1.4 PARALLEL PROTOCOL REQUEST (01,06,04H)

Parallel Protocol Request messages are used to negotiate a synchronous data transfer agreement and a wide data transfer agreement and to set the protocol options between two SCSI devices.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Extended message = 01h							
1	Extended message length = 06h							
2	Parallel Protocol Request = 04h							
3	Transfer period factor							
4	Reserved = 00h							
5	REQ/ACK Offset							
6	Transfer Width Exponent							
7	PCOMP_EN RTI	RTI	RD_STRM	WR_FLOW	HOLD_MCS	QAS_REQ	DT_REQ	IU_REQ

Figure 186. Parallel Protocol Request.

PARALLEL PROTOCOL REQUEST messages are used to negotiate a synchronous data transfer agreement and a wide data transfer agreement and to set the protocol options between the initiator and the drive.

**Transfer Period Factor** selects the transfer period and determines the timing values for the transfer rate. When both DT\_REQ and IU\_REQ are set to one, the following values are used. For the values larger than 9 is received from the initiator when both DT\_REQ and IU\_REQ are set to one, the drive responds with these bits set to zero.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 8	Mt = 08h	6.25	Fast-160
9 <= Mi <= 9	Mt = 09h	12.5	Fast-80

Figure 187. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT\_REQ = 1, IU\_REQ = 1)

If DT\_REQ is set to one and IU\_REQ is set to zero, the following values are used.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 9	Mt = 09h	12.5	Fast-80
10 <= Mi <= 10	Mt = 0Ah	25	Fast-40
11 <= Mi <= 12	Mt = 0Ch	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	Mt = 19h	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 255	Mt = 19h	(Asynch Mode)	Asynch

Figure 188. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT\_REQ = 1, IU\_REQ = 0)

If both DT\_REQ and IU\_REQ are set to zero, the following values are used.

Initiator Request	Target Response	Target Transfer Period (ns)	Transfer Rate
0 <= Mi <= 10	Mt = 0Ah	25	Fast-40
11 <= Mi <= 12	Mt = 0Ch	50	Fast-20
13 <= Mi <= 25	Mt = 19h	100	Fast-10
26 <= Mi <= 50	Mt = 32h	200	Fast-5
51 <= Mi <= 255	Mt = 32h	(Asynch Mode)	Asynch

Figure 189. Initiator Request/Target Response (DT\_REQ = 0, IU\_REQ = 0)

- **REQ/ACK Offset** determines the maximum number of REQs allowed to be outstanding before a corresponding ACK is received at the drive during synchronous or paced transfers. The REQ/ACK Offset value is chosen to prevent overflow conditions in the reception buffer and offset counter of the drive. The drive supports maximum offset of 127 (7Fh). A REQ/ACK Offset value of zero indicates asynchronous data transfer mode and that the Transfer Period Factor and the protocol options bits except QAS\_REQ will be ignored.
- **Transfer Wide Exponent** defines the transfer width to be used during DATA IN and DATA OUT phases. If any of the protocol options bits other than QAS\_REQ are set to one, then only wide transfer agreements are valid. The following values are supported.
  - 00h: 8 bit data bus (Narrow transfer agreement).
  - 01h: 16 bit data bus (Wide transfer agreement).
- **PCOMP\_EN** (Precompensation Enable) is used to negotiate if the precompensation is enabled on all signals transmitted during DT DATA phases. The drive supports PCOMP\_EN.
- **RTI** (Retain Training Information) is used to negotiate if the saving of paced data transfer training information is made so that the retraining is not necessary on each connection. The drive support RTI.
- **RD\_STRM** (Read Streaming and Read Flow Control Enable) is used to negotiate if read streaming and read flow control are enabled. The drive supports RD\_STRM.
- **WR\_FLOW** (Write Flow Control Enable) is used to negotiate if write flow control is enabled during write streaming. The drive supports WR\_FLOW.



- **HOLD\_MCS** (Hold Margin Control Settings) is used to negotiate if any margin control settings which has been set with the margin control subpage of the port control mode page is retained.
- **QAS\_REQ** (Quick Arbitration and Selection Enable Request) is used to negotiate if QAS is enabled. The drive supports QAS when IU\_REQ is negotiated to be effective.
- **DT\_REQ** (DT Clocking Enable Request) is used to negotiate if DT DATA phase is enabled. The drive supports DT\_REQ.
- **IU\_REQ** (Information Unit Enable Request) is used to negotiate if information unit transfer is enabled. The drive supports IU\_REQ.

### 10.1.5 SAVE DATA POINTER (02h)

This message is sent from the drive to direct the initiator to copy the active data pointer to the saved data pointer. The SAVE DATA POINTER message is only sent if the initiator has previously indicated the ability to accommodate disconnection and reconnection via the IDENTIFY message.

The drive will send the SAVE DATA POINTER message to the initiator prior to sending a DISCONNECT message to the initiator if a DATA phase has occurred and another data phase is required to successfully complete the command.

### 10.1.6 RESTORE POINTERS (03h)

This message is sent from the drive to direct an initiator to copy the most recently saved pointers to the corresponding command, data, and status pointers. Command and status pointers should be restored to the beginning of the present command and status areas. The data pointer should be restored to the value at the beginning of the data area in the absence of a SAVE DATA POINTER message or to the value at the point at which the last SAVE DATA POINTER message occurred. Also see Section 10.4, "SCSI Bus Related Error Handling Protocol" on page 191.

### 10.1.7 DISCONNECT (04h)

This message is sent from the drive to inform an initiator that the present connection is going to be broken. A later reconnect will be required in order to complete the current command. The disconnection serves to free the SCSI bus while the drive performs a relatively long operation that does not require the bus. These messages are sent only if the initiator previously indicated (via the IDENTIFY message) the ability to accommodate disconnection and reconnection.

The DISCONNECT message may also be sent from the initiator to the drive to disconnect from the SCSI bus. The drive does not support the DISCONNECT message from the initiator. And it always responds by sending MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator.

### 10.1.8 INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR (05h)

This message is sent from an initiator to inform the drive that an error has been detected that does not preclude the drive from retrying the previous COMMAND, DATA, STATUS and MESSAGE IN phase. The source of the error may be either related to previous activities on the SCSI bus or may be internal to the initiator and unrelated to any previous SCSI bus activity

If the initiator intends to send this message, the initiator must assert the ATN signal prior to its release of ACK for the last byte transferred in the information phase that is to be retried. This provides an interlock so the drive can determine which information phase to retry.

After receiving this message, the drive may retry the previous phase by sending a RESTORE POINTERS message to the initiator and then repeating the previous COMMAND, DATA, or STATUS phase.

After receiving this message the drive may retry the MESSAGE IN phase by switching to the MESSAGE IN phase with asserting REQ and repeating the previous MESSAGE IN phase.

### **10.1.9 ABORT (06h)**

This message is sent from the initiator to direct the drive to clear the present operation for this initiator and logical unit including queued command(s). If a logical unit has been identified, then all pending data and status for the issuing initiator and this logical unit will be cleared and the drive will go to the BUS FREE phase. Pending data and status for other logical unit and initiators will not be cleared. If a logical unit has not been identified, the drive will go to the BUS FREE phase without affecting an operation on any logical unit for this initiator or any other initiator. In either case no status or ending message will be sent to the initiator for this operation. It is not an error to send the ABORT message to a logical unit that is not currently performing an operation for the initiator.

**Note:** It is permissible for an initiator to select the drive/LUN after the drive has disconnected from the initiator for the purpose of sending an IDENTIFY message followed by an ABORT message. This will abort the command on the specified logical unit.

### **10.1.10 MESSAGE REJECT (07h)**

This message is sent from either the initiator or the drive to indicate that the last message received was inappropriate or has not been implemented.

If the initiator intends to send this message, the initiator must assert the ATN signal prior to its release of ACK for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message byte that is to be rejected. This provides an interlock so the drive can determine which message is rejected.

If the drive intends to send this message, the drive will change to the MESSAGE IN phase and send the MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator prior to transferring any additional message bytes (or any other information phase bytes) from the initiator regardless of ATN signal. This provides an interlock so the initiator can determine which message is rejected. After the drive sends a MESSAGE REJECT message and if ATN signal is still asserted, it shall return to the MESSAGE OUT phase. The subsequent MESSAGE OUT phase shall begin with the first byte of a message.

### **10.1.11 NO OPERATION (08h)**

This message is sent from the initiator to the drive when the initiator does not currently have any other valid message to send. This message is ignored by the drive and will not affect any operation.

### **10.1.12 MESSAGE PARITY ERROR (09h)**

This message is sent from the initiator to inform the drive that the last message byte received had a parity error.

If the initiator intends to send this message, the initiator must assert the ATN signal prior to its release of ACK for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message byte that has the parity error. This provides an interlock so the drive can determine which message byte has the parity error.

If the drive receives this message under any other circumstance, the drive will change to BUS FREE to signal a catastrophic error. After receiving this message, the drive will retry sending the previous message to the initiator.

### **10.1.13 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (0Ah)**

The drive sends this message to the initiator to indicate that execution of a linked command (with flag bit equal to zero) has completed and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message, the drive goes to COMMAND phase to receive the next command.

### 10.1.14 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE WITH FLAG (0Bh)

The drive sends this message to the initiator to indicate that the execution of a linked command with flag bit set to one has completed and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message, the drive goes to COMMAND phase to receive the next command.

### 10.1.15 TARGET RESET (0Ch)

This message is sent from an initiator to direct the drive to clear all current commands. This message forces a hard reset condition which will reset the drive to an initial state with no operations pending for any initiator. After receiving this message the drive will go to the BUS FREE phase.

### 10.1.16 ABORT TAG (0Dh)

When the drive successfully receives this message, it clears the current I/O process and go to Bus Free. If the drive has already started execution of an I/O process, the execution will be halted. Pending status, data, and commands for other active or queued I/O processes shall not be affected.

### 10.1.17 CLEAR QUEUE TAG (0Eh)

All I/O processes for all initiators shall be cleared. All active I/O processes shall be terminated. The drive shall go to the Bus Free phase following successfully receipt of this message.

### 10.1.18 QUEUE TAG MESSAGES (20xxh, 21xxh, 22xxh)

---

Byte	Value	Description
0	20H	Simple
	21H	Head of Queue
	22H	Ordered
1	XXh	Queue Tag

---

Figure 190. Queue Tag Messages

Queue Tag messages are used to specify an identifier called a Queue Tag for an I/O process which establish the I\_T\_L\_Q nexus. The queue tag field is an 8-bit unsigned integer assigned by the initiator during an initial connection. The Queue Tag for every I/O process for each I\_T\_L nexus must be unique. If the drive receives a Queue Tag that is currently in use for the I\_T\_L nexus, it will respond as "Incorrect Initiator Response". A Queue Tag becomes available for reassignment when I/O process ends. The numeric value of a Queue Tag has no effect on the order of execution.

Whenever an initiator connects to the drive, the appropriate Queue Tag message must be sent immediately following the Identify message and within the same MESSAGE OUT phase to establish the I\_T\_L\_Q nexus for the I/O process.

Whenever the drive reconnects to an initiator to continue a tagged I/O process, the Simple Queue Tag message is sent immediately following the Identify and within the same MESSAGE IN phase to revive the I\_T\_L\_Q nexus for the I/O process.

#### 10.1.18.1 SIMPLE (20xxh)

The SIMPLE Message specifies that the current I/O process be placed in the command queue. The order of execution with respect to other I/O processes received with SIMPLE Queue Tag Messages is up to the discretion of the drive. The drive will send a SIMPLE Queue Tag Messages after reselection for I/O processes that were received with either SIMPLE, ORDERED, or HEAD OF QUEUE messages.

### 10.1.18.2 HEAD OF QUEUE (21xxh)

Commands with this tag should be inserted into the head of the queue. When a command is being executed, this tagged command will be inserted to the head of queue to be executed after the command being currently executed. The previous executed command will not be terminated by this tagged command. This tagged command will wait until the previous command is completed. If plural head-of-queue tagged commands are received, those command will be executed in LIFO (Last in First out) order.

### 10.1.18.3 ORDERED (22xxh)

This tagged command is executed in the order received. All commands received before this command should be executed before this command and all commands received after this command should be executed after this command.

## 10.1.19 IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE (2301h)

---

Byte	Value	Description
0	23H	Ignore Wide Residue message
1	01H	Ignore

---

Figure 191. Ignore Wide Residue Message Format

The IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE MESSAGE is sent from the drive to indicate that the number of valid bytes sent during the last REQ/ACK handshake of a DATA IN phase is less than the negotiated transfer width. The ignore field (always = 01h) indicates that one byte (data bits 8-15) should be ignored. This message is sent immediately after the DATA IN phase and prior to any other messages. Even though a byte is invalid, it's corresponding parity bit is valid for the value transferred.

### 10.1.20 IDENTIFY (80 - FFh)

This message is set by either the initiator or the drive to establish the logical path connection between the two devices.

The IDENTIFY message is defined as follows:

- Bit 7** This bit is always set to one to distinguish the IDENTIFY message from other messages.
- Bit 6** This bit is only set to one by the initiator to grant the drive the privilege of disconnecting. If this bit is zero, the drive will not disconnect unless the initiator instructs the drive to disconnect by sending a DISCONNECT message to the drive. This bit is set to zero when the drive sends an IDENTIFY message to the initiator.
- Bits 5-0** These bits specify the logical unit number (LUN).  
Only one LUN may be identified for any one selection sequence. If the drive receives an IDENTIFY message with a new LUN after the LUN had previously been identified, the drive will go to the BUS FREE phase to signal a catastrophic error. The initiator may send more than one Identify message during a selection sequence in order to toggle disconnect/ reconnect permission if the specified LUN remains the same.

When the IDENTIFY message is sent from the drive to the initiator during reconnection, an implied RESTORE POINTERS message must be performed by the initiator.

---

## 10.2 Supported Message Functions

The implementation of the supported messages will also include the following functions.

- Retry SCSI Command or STATUS phase

The retry will be caused by the following error condition.

- The drive detected SCSI bus parity error (COMMAND phase)
- The drive receives INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE during or at the conclusion of an information transfer phase (Command Data Out or Status Phase)

**Note:** The initiator may send the INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message as a result of an initiator detected SCSI Bus parity error or an internal error.

- Retry MESSAGE IN phase

The retry will be caused by the receipt of a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message or INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message immediately following a MESSAGE IN phase.

**Note:** The Initiator may send the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message as a result of an Initiator detected SCSI Bus parity error during the MESSAGE IN phase. The initiator may send the INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message as a result of an Initiator detected an internal error during the MESSAGE IN phase.

- Receipt of multiple Identify message

- The initiator is allowed to send multiple IDENTIFY messages out in order to toggle the disconnect/reconnect permission bit. This may be used to selectively enable or disable disconnect/reconnect permission during portions of a command. Note that this function does not affect the operation of the Forced Disconnect function.

- MESSAGE REJECT during Drive Disconnection

- If the Initiator rejects the SAVE DATA POINTER message, the drive will disable disconnect/reconnect permission. This is equivalent to receiving an IDENTIFY message with bit 6 equal to zero. This will cause the drive to inhibit the pending disconnection.
- If the initiator rejects the DISCONNECT message, the drive will not disconnect but may attempt to disconnect at a later time. This function may be used to selectively disable disconnection during portions of a command.

---

## 10.3 Attention Condition

The attention condition allows an initiator to inform the drive that a MESSAGE OUT phase is desired. The initiator may create the attention condition by asserting the ATN signal at any time except during the ARBITRATION or BUS FREE phases.

The initiator must create the attention condition by asserting the ATN signal at least two deskew delays before releasing ACK for the last byte transferred in a bus phase to guarantee that the attention condition will be honored before transition to a new bus phase. This will guarantee a predictable drive response to a message received during the MESSAGE OUT phase for this attention condition. If the ATN signal is asserted later, it may be honored in the current bus phase or the next bus phase and then may not result in the expected action.

After the initiator asserts the ATN signal, the drive will respond with the MESSAGE OUT phase as follows:

<b>Current Phase</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>COMMAND</b>	MESSAGE OUT phase will occur after part or all of the Command Descriptor Block has been transferred to the drive. The initiator must continue REQ/ACK handshakes during the COMMAND phase until the drive enters the MESSAGE OUT phase.
<b>DATA</b>	The MESSAGE OUT phase will occur after part or all of the data bytes have been transferred and not necessarily on a logical block boundary. The initiator must continue REQ/ACK handshakes (asynchronous transfer) until it detects the phase change.  <b>Note:</b> In synchronous transfer the initiator must continue sending ACK pulses to reach an offset of zero.
<b>STATUS</b>	The MESSAGE OUT phase will occur after the REQ/ACK handshake of the status byte has been completed.
<b>MESSAGE IN</b>	The MESSAGE OUT phase will occur before the drive sends another message.
<b>SELECTION</b>	If ATN occurs during a SELECTION phase and before the initiator releases the BSY signal, the MESSAGE OUT phase will occur immediately after that SELECTION phase.
<b>RESELECTION</b>	The MESSAGE OUT phase will occur after the drive has sent its IDENTIFY message for that RESELECTION phase. (First the drive tries to complete the reselection.)

The initiator must keep the ATN signal asserted if more than one message byte is to be transferred during the MESSAGE Out phase. The drive will process each message byte (multiple bytes for an extended message) prior to receiving the next message from the initiator. The drive will continue to handshake and process byte(s) in the MESSAGE OUT phase until ATN goes false unless one of the following conditions occurs:

1. The drive receives an illegal or inappropriate message and goes to the MESSAGE IN phase to send a MESSAGE REJECT message.
2. The drive detects a catastrophic error condition and goes to the BUS FREE phase.

---

## 10.4 SCSI Bus Related Error Handling Protocol

This protocol is used to handle errors that threaten the integrity of a connection between the Target and an initiator.

### 10.4.1 Unexpected BUS FREE Phase Error Condition

There are several error conditions that will cause the drive to immediately change to the BUS FREE phase regardless of the state of the ATN signal. The drive will not attempt to reconnect to the initiator to complete the operation that was in progress when the error condition was detected. The initiator should interpret this as a catastrophic error condition.

If the LUN was identified by the drive prior to the error condition, the drive will abort the active command for this initiator/LUN and generate sense data for this initiator/LUN to describe the cause of the catastrophic error. The initiator may retrieve this sense data by issuing a REQUEST SENSE command to this LUN. Note however, that the REQUEST SENSE command may fail if the catastrophic error condition persists.

If the LUN was not identified by the drive prior to the error condition, the drive will not affect the sense data or the operation of any currently executing command for this initiator or any other initiator.

### 10.4.2 MESSAGE OUT Phase Parity Error

The drive will optionally retry the message phase and, if it still fails, abort the current command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense data of ABORTED COMMAND / SCSI PARITY ERROR. If the parity error occurs before the ITL nexus is established (on the initial IDENTIFY message), the drive is to go to the bus free state.

### 10.4.3 MESSAGE IN Phase Parity Error (MESSAGE PARITY ERROR)

The drive may retry the message phase and, if it still fails, abort the current command and go to bus free, setting sense data of ABORTED COMMAND / SCSI PARITY ERROR.

### 10.4.4 COMMAND Phase Parity Error

The drive may retry the command phase after sending a restore pointers message. If it still fails, it will abort the current command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense data of ABORTED COMMAND / SCSI PARITY ERROR.

### 10.4.5 DATA OUT Phase Parity Error

If the drive detects a parity error during DATA OUT phase, the drive will abort the current command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense data of ABORTED COMMAND / SCSI PARITY ERROR.

## 10.4.6 INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message

An INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message is valid after a COMMAND, DATA IN/OUT or STATUS phase has occurred. If another phase has occurred, the message is rejected. Depending on the model, the drive will optionally retry the previous phase if it is command or status. If this fails or the previous phase was a data transfer the drive will generate a CHECK CONDITION status and a Sense key of ABORTED COMMAND with additional sense code of INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR.

## 10.4.7 MESSAGE REJECT Message

The drive will take the following actions after receiving the MESSAGE REJECT message in response to messages listed below.

<b>DISCONNECT</b>	The drive is not disconnected but remains connected.
<b>COMMAND COMPLETE</b>	No error, continue to BUS FREE.
<b>IDENTIFY</b>	Command aborted - enter BUS FREE - Sense data set to MESSAGE REJECT ERROR.
<b>LINKED CMD CMPLT</b>	Command aborted - link broken - enter BUS FREE - sense data set to MESSAGE REJECT ERROR.
<b>MESSAGE REJECT</b>	Command aborted - STATUS phase executed with CHECK CONDITION - sense data set to MESSAGE REJECT ERROR.
<b>RESTORE POINTERS</b>	Command aborted - status set to CHECK CONDITION - sense will be set with the error that caused the RESTORE POINTERS message to be issued. (Assuming that error recovery is in progress)
<b>SAVE DATA POINTER</b>	The drive will not disconnect from the SCSI bus and it will not be considered an error.
<b>No previous Msg</b>	MESSAGE REJECT message is returned in response to initiator's MESSAGE REJECT message.



---

## 11.0 Additional information

This chapter provides additional information or descriptions of various functions, features, or operating models supported by the Target that are not fully described in previous chapters.

---

### 11.1 SCSI Protocol

There are various operating conditions that prevent the Target from executing a SCSI command. This section describes each of these operating conditions and their relative priority.

#### 11.1.1 Priority of SCSI Status Byte Reporting

After establishing the I\_T\_L nexus or I\_T\_L\_Q nexus the Target must first determine whether command execution is allowed. Execution is deferred until a later time if the command must be added to the command queue. Execution may also be prevented by an internal Target condition that requires the reporting of a CHECK CONDITION, QUEUE FULL, BUSY or RESERVATION CONFLICT Status. There are several different internal conditions to be active at the same time. The order in which the Target checks for each of these conditions determines their priority (highest priority first) as follows:

1. CHECK CONDITION status for invalid Logical Unit Number. See Section 11.1.2 , “Invalid LUN in Identify Message” on page 194.
2. CHECK CONDITION status for Incorrect Initiator Connection. See Section 11.1.3 , “Incorrect Initiator Connection” on page 194.
3. BUSY Status or QUEUE FULL Status. See Section 11.1.4 “Command processing during execution of active I/O process” on page 194.
4. CHECK CONDITION status for UNIT ATTENTION condition. See Section 11.1.5 “Unit Attention Condition” on page 196.
5. CHECK CONDITION status during Startup and Format operations. See Section 11.1.6 “Command processing during startup and format operations” on page 197.
6. CHECK CONDITION status for Deferred Error Condition. See Section 11.1.7 , “Deferred Error” on page 197.
7. RESERVATION CONFLICT status. See Section 11.1.9 , “Command processing while reserved” on page 203.
8. CHECK CONDITION status for invalid command opcode
9. CHECK CONDITION status for invalid command descriptor block

The highest priority internal condition that prevents command execution is reported by the Target if there is no bus error.

For all CHECK CONDITION Sense data is built by the drive provided a valid LUN address is known. Sense data is cleared by the Target upon receipt of any subsequent command to the LUN from the initiator receiving the CHECK CONDITION.

## 11.1.2 Invalid LUN in Identify Message

There are three different circumstances defined within the SCSI protocol when the response to an invalid LUN will occur. Each of these result in a different response.

### 1.1.1 .1 Case 1 - Selection message sequence with Inquiry command

The INQUIRY command is a special case in SCSI. It is used to configure the bus when the drive ID's and LUN's are not known. The proper response is to return the inquiry data with a peripheral drive type of 1Fh which indicates that the specified LUN is not supported.

### 1.1.1 .1 Case 2 - Selection message sequence with any other command

Any other commands except REQUEST SENSE return CHECK CONDITION status when an invalid LUN is specified in the message sequence following selection. In response to a REQUEST SENSE command the drive shall return sense data. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to LOGICAL UNIT NOT SUPPORTED.

### 11.1.2 .1 Case 3 - After selection message sequence

It is permissible for the initiator to issue multiple IDENTIFY messages during a single command sequence provided the LUN remains the same. If the LUN is altered, the drive goes to a BUS FREE Phase.

## 11.1.3 Incorrect Initiator Connection

Incorrect Initiator Connection error is reported if any of the following conditions occur:

- an Initiator attempts to establish an I\_T\_L nexus when an I/O process (either queued or active) with an I\_T\_L nexus already exists from a previous connection with the same initiator.
- an Initiator attempts to establish an I\_T\_L\_Q nexus when an I/O process (either queued or active) with an I\_T\_L\_Q nexus already exists from a previous connection with the same initiator.

**Note:** It is not an Incorrect Initiator Connection to attempt to establish an I\_T\_L nexus when an I\_T\_L\_Q nexus already exists or establish an I\_T\_L\_Q nexus when an I\_T\_L nexus already exists.

But when sense is pending on the logical unit for the initiator and send command is not REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY or REPORT LUNS, sense data is cleared upon receipt of the command.

If any of the above errors occur, all queued I/O processes and active I/O processes associated with the issuing Initiator on the specified logical unit are terminated. The current I/O process is ended with a CHECK CONDITION status, the sense key is set to ABORTED COMMAND, and the additional sense code is set to OVERLAPPED COMMANDS ATTEMPTED. Status is only returned for the current I/O process.

## 11.1.4 Command Processing during execution of active I/O process

When the Target is not executing any active I/O processes, a new I/O process is permitted to execute unless execution is prevented by another internal Target condition listed in Section 11.1.1, "Priority of SCSI Status Byte Reporting" on page 193.

If an active I/O process does exist when the Target receives a new command, the Target determines how the new command should be handled based on the following rules:

- CHECK CONDITION Status is returned with Sense Key set to ABORTED COMMAND for an Incorrect Initiator Connector Condition error. See 11.1.3, "Incorrect Initiator Connection."
- the command is permitted to execute if the command is an INQUIRY, REQUEST SENSE, or REPORT LUNS command
- CHECK CONDITION Status is returned with Sense Key set to Logical Unit Not Ready if the bringup operation or format operation is an active process.

- the command is permitted to execute if the conditions to execute concurrently are met. (See Section 11.5, “Concurrent I/O Process.”)
- the command is added to the command queue for an I\_T\_L nexus under the following conditions:
  - no Queue Tag message was received during the connection which established the I/O process,
  - disconnection is allowed for the current I/O process
  - there is no queued I/O process or active I/O process corresponding to the I\_T\_L nexus for the current I/O process
  - the command is not linked to a previous command
- the command is added to the command queue for an I\_T\_L\_Q nexus under the following conditions:
  - a Queue Tag message was received during the connection which established the I/O process
  - Tagged Queuing is enabled (DQue, Mode Page A is set to zero)
  - an I/O process (either active or queued) exists at the Target for this Initiator
  - disconnection is allowed for the current I/O process
  - there is no queued I/O process or active I/O process corresponding to the I\_T\_L\_Q nexus for the current I/O process
  - the command is not linked to a previous command
- QUEUE FULL Status is returned under one of the following conditions:
  - the command would otherwise be queued (according to the rules described above) but the command queue is full and all slots are utilized
  - the command would otherwise be queued (according to the rules described above) but all of the available command queue slots not reserved for use by another initiator are utilized
  - Tagged Queuing is enabled (DQue is set to zero) and a FORMAT UNIT command was previously queued but has not yet begun execution
  - Tagged Queuing is enabled (DQue is set to zero) and a START STOP UNIT command was previously queued but has not yet begun execution
- BUSY Status is returned under one of the following conditions:
  - Tagged Queuing is disabled (DQue = 1) and a FORMAT UNIT command was previously queued but has not yet begun execution
  - Tagged Queuing is disabled (DQue = 1) and a START STOP UNIT command was previously queued but has not yet begun execution
  - the command would otherwise be queued (according to the rules described above) but disconnection is not allowed for the current I/O process.

If a command is queued, command execution may still be prevented at a later time when the command is dequeued to become an active I/O process. This occurs if command execution is prevented by another internal Target condition listed in Section 11.1.1, “Priority of SCSI Status Byte Reporting” at the time the command is dequeued.

## 11.1.5 Unit Attention Condition

The drive will generate a unit attention condition for each initiator under the following conditions:

- The drive has been reset. This includes Power On Reset, SCSI Bus Reset, and TARGET RESET message.
- The transceiver mode has been changed.
- The mode parameters in effect for this initiator have been changed by another initiator.
- The log page parameters have been cleared by LOG SELECT command with PCR bit. In this case a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators except the one that issued the command.
- The registration or reservation made by send PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT command is cleared by another initiator. In this case a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators that the registration or reservation is cleared except the one that issued the command.
- The device identifier information is set by SET DEVICE IDENTIFIER command. In this case a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators except the one that issued command.
- FORMAT UNIT command has been completed. In this case a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators except the one that issued command.
- The microcode has been changed. WRITE BUFFER command has been executed to download microcode. In this case a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators except the one that issued the command.
- Commands are cleared by another initiator. This condition is generated against the initiator that has queued commands if
  - CLEAR TASK SET message is received.
  - Contingent Allegiance Condition is cleared when Err (Mode Page A) is 01b.
  - DQue (Mode Page A) is set to one while queued command exist.
- PFA threshold has been exceeded when Method of Reporting defined in Mode Page 1Ch is 2h (Generate unit attention).

If the drive receives a command from each initiator before reporting a CHECK CONDITION status for a pending unit attention condition for that initiator, the response of the drive varies with the command as follows:

<b>INQUIRY</b>	The drive executes the command with a GOOD status and preserves the unit attention condition.
<b>REPORT LUNS</b>	same as above.
<b>REQUEST SENSE</b>	If the drive has an available pending sense data for the initiator, the drive sends the pending sense data and preserves the unit attention condition for the initiator. If the drive does not have an available pending sense data for the initiator, the drive sends sense data for the unit attention condition and clears the unit attention condition for the initiator.  Note : the drive sends sense data for the unit attention condition in spite of setting of UAI jumper or UAI (Mode Page 0).
<b>ALL OTHER</b>	The drive terminates the command with a CHECK CONDITION status and preserves the unit attention condition.

See Section 11.15 "Contingent Allegiance Condition" on page 209 for the drive responses when it receives a command from an initiator after reporting a CHECK CONDITION status for a pending unit attention condition for that initiator.

## 11.1.6 Command Processing During Startup and Format Operations

If the drive receives a command from an Initiator while it is executing a startup or format operation, the response of the drive varies with the command as follows:

<b>INQUIRY</b>	The drive sends INQUIRY data and returns appropriate status.
<b>REPORT LUNS</b>	Same as above.
<b>REQUEST SENSE</b>	<p>Executes the command, returns a Sense key of NOT READY and an Additional Sense Code of LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY and returns GOOD STATUS.</p> <p>The Additional Sense Code Qualifier that is returned depends on type of I/O processes that are active:</p> <p>For the START/STOP UNIT and the Auto-start operation, the qualifier returned is LOGICAL UNIT IS IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY. For the FORMAT UNIT command, the qualifier returned is LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, FORMAT IN PROGRESS, and the Sense key specific bytes are set to return the progress indication.</p>
<b>ALL OTHER</b>	The drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The Sense data generated is described in Request Sense above.

## 11.1.7 Deferred Error

Error code (71h) of sense data indicates that the CHECK CONDITION status returned is the result of an error or exception condition that occurred during execution of a previous command for which GOOD status has already been returned.

The drive creates an Deferred Error condition when

- FORMAT UNIT command with the immediate bit of one ends with an error.
- WRITE command ends with an error when WCE (Mode Page 8) is set to one.

## 11.1.8 Degraded Mode

There are certain errors or conditions which may impair the ability of the drive to function normally. This mode of limited operation is called the Degraded Mode.

There are three conditions in the Degraded Mode:

- **Spindle Motor Degrade** is caused by one of the following conditions:
  - Spindle Motor is not started by the option jumper setting (Disable Auto Spin Up)
  - Spindle Motor is delayed from spinning up by the option jumper setting (Auto Start Delay)
  - Spindle Motor was started (by POR or START STOP UNIT command) and the Target is under the bring-up operation
  - Spindle Motor failed to start
  - Spindle Motor was stopped by START STOP UNIT command after the drive successfully completed the Self Configuration
- **Bring-Up Failure Degraded** is caused by one of the following conditions:
  - Read failure of RAM code or configuration information from media during the bring-up operation
  - Invalid RAM code or configuration information
- **Format Command Failure Degraded**

This condition is caused when FORMAT UNIT command failed or was interrupted abnormally (FDD, Mode Page 0, controls Format Degraded mode)

### 11.1.8 .1 Response to SCSI Command in Degraded Mode

The following tables show the degraded mode status with acceptable commands and additional sense codes.

Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The Target may return Sense Key 020402h (NOT READY, INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and Check Condition 020402h is returned with Sense KCQ NOT READY) (INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)
START STOP UNIT (Start)	Executed - Success: GOOD Status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared - Spindle Motor Start Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL) - Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)
START STOP UNIT (Stop)	Executed. GOOD STATUS is returned. Motor Degraded Mode is NOT cleared
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020402h (NOT READY, INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)

Figure 192. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Disable Auto Start

Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The drive may return Sense KCQ 020401h (NOT READY, IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY)
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020401h (NOT READY, IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY)
START STOP UNIT (Start)	<p>Executed</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Success: GOOD status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared</li> <li>- Spindle Motor Start Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL)</li> <li>- Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)</li> </ul>
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020401h (NOT READY, IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY)

Figure 193. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Auto Start Delay/Spinning Up

Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The drive may return Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL)
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL)
START STOP UNIT (Start)	Executed - Success: Good status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared - Spindle Motor Start Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL) - Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)
START STOP UNIT (Stop)	Executed. GOOD Status is returned. Motor Degraded Mode is NOT cleared
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL)

Figure 194. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Spindle Start Failure



Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The drive may return Sense KCQ 020402h (NOT READY, INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020402h (NOT READY, INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)
START STOP UNIT (Start)	<p>Executed</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Success: Good status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared</li> <li>- Spindle Motor Start Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense Key 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL)</li> <li>- Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)</li> </ul>
START STOP UNIT (Stop)	Executed. GOOD Status is returned. Motor Degraded Mode is NOT cleared
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 020402h (NOT READY, INITIALIZE COMMAND REQUIRED)

Figure 195. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode - Spindle Stopped by START STOP UNIT Command

Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The drive may return Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)
START STOP UNIT (Start)	Executed - Success: GOOD status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared - Spindle Motor Start Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 020400h (NOT READY, START SPINDLE MOTOR FAIL) - Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense Key 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)
WRITE BUFFER (Download and Save)	Executed. - Success: GOOD status is returned. Spindle Motor Degraded Mode is cleared - Bring-up Failure: CHECK CONDITION with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED) WRITE BUFFER
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense KCQ 024080h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - BRING-UP FAIL) or Sense KCQ 024085h (NOT READY, DIAG FAIL - RAM CODE NOT LOADED)

Figure 196. Self Configuration Failure Degraded Mode

Command (w/Option)	Response
REQUEST SENSE	Executed. The drive may return Sense KCQ 023100h (NOT READY, FORMAT CORRUPTED) or Sense KCQ 033100h (MEDIUM ERROR, FORMAT CORRUPTED) REQUEST SENSE
INQUIRY	Executed
REPORT LUNS	Executed
TEST UNIT READY	Executed and CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense Key 023100h (NOT READY, FORMAT CORRUPTED)
FORMAT UNIT	Executed - Success: GOOD Status is returned. Format Degraded Mode is cleared - Failure: CHECK CONDITION Status is returned and Format Degraded Mode is NOT cleared.
Other Commands	Not Executed. CHECK CONDITION is returned with Sense Key 033100h (MEDIUM ERROR, FORMAT CORRUPTED)

Figure 197. Format Command Failure Degraded Mode

Note: This table assumes FDD (Mode Page 0) is set to zero.

### 11.1.9 Command processing while reserved

A logical unit is reserved after successful execution of the RESERVE command. Each time a RESERVE command is executed successfully, the Target records the SCSI ID of the Initiator that made the reservation and the SCSI ID of the Initiator that is to receive the reservation. This information is needed to determine whether subsequent commands should be permitted or if the RESERVATION CONFLICT Status should be reported. The Initiator to receive the reservation may be either the same or a different Initiator (third-party reservation).

If the logical unit is reserved when a new command is received, the Target examines the command opcode and the SCSI ID of the issuing Initiator to determine whether a RESERVATION CONFLICT Status should be returned based on the following rules:

1. If the issuing Initiator is the one that made the reservation and also the one to receive the reservation, all commands are permitted.
2. If the issuing Initiator is neither the one that made the reservation nor the one that receives the reservation,
  - A REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, REPORT LUNS, LOG SENSE, READ CAPACITY, REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER or START STOP UNIT with START bit is permitted.
  - A RELEASE command is permitted but is ignored
  - Any other command results in a RESERVATION CONFLICT Status

3. If the issuing initiator is the one that made the reservation but is not the one to receive the reservation,
  - A REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, REPORT LUNS, LOG SENSE, READ CAPACITY, REPORT DEVICE IDENTIFIER or START STOP UNIT with START bit is permitted.
  - Any other command results in a RESERVATION CONFLICT Status
4. If the issuing initiator is not the one that made the reservation but is the one to receive the reservation,
  - A RESERVE command results in a RESERVATION CONFLICT Status
  - A RELEASE command is permitted but is ignored
  - Any other command is permitted

If a RESERVATION CONFLICT Status is not reported and the command is permitted, then the Target checks the next highest priority internal condition to determine whether execution is allowed. See Section 11.1.1 , "Priority of SCSI Status Byte Reporting" on page 193

---

## 11.2 Priority commands

The following SCSI commands known as Priority Commands always execute without returning a BUSY Status or RESERVATION CONFLICT Status.

- INQUIRY
- REQUEST SENSE
- REPORT LUNS

These commands do not disconnect from the SCSI bus prior to completion. They are executed prior to attempting to complete the execution of any other pending command that has disconnected from the SCSI bus. Therefore, a second priority command cannot be received during the execution of a priority command.

These commands are never queued whether or not the command is sent with a queue tag. However, the rule for an Incorrect Initiator Connection still apply to priority commands. See Section 11.1.3 , "Incorrect Initiator Connection" on page 194.

---

## 11.3 Command queuing

When the initiator specifies that the drive shall disable command queuing, the initiator must send only untagged commands. When the initiator specifies that the drive shall enable command queuing, the initiator may send either tagged or untagged command, but shall not use both at the same time.

The following commands are never queued and will be immediately executed without Bus disconnection:

- Priority Commands
- Commands linked to previous commands. These are defined to be part of a single I/O process. (Linked commands are always executed immediately following the previous command from the same initiator. No other Initiator's command is allowed to be executed between two linked commands.)
- Commands for which disconnection is not allowed. (These may result in a BUSY Status.)
- Commands in which a SCSI bus error occurred between SELECTION and first disconnection following the receipt of the CDB.
- Commands for an invalid LUN.

- Commands which cause an OVERLAPPED COMMANDS ATTEMPTED error. See Section 11.1.3 , "Incorrect Initiator Connection" on page 194.

### 11.3.1 Queue depth

Any initiator can queue at least one command at any time irrespective of the actions of any other initiators in the system. A single initiator may queue up to 128 commands, if no other initiator has more than one command in the queue, although at times this maximum may be reduced as the drive can reserve command blocks for internal use.

### 11.3.2 Tagged queuing

Commands with a tag message are saved in the command queue. Queued commands will be reordered by the drive defined rule. See Section 11.4, "Command reordering" on page 206 for details.

### 11.3.3 Untagged queuing

The drive supports queuing one I/O process from each initiator. If the drive receives an untagged I/O process while executing an I/O process from a different initiator, the untagged I/O process may be queued.

The drive treats untagged I/O processes as though they were received with Simple Queue Tag messages for purposes of queuing.

### 11.3.4 Command queuing rule

Commands can be received during an active I/O process if the Bus is free. I/O processes of READ(6), READ EXTEND(10), WRITE(6) and WRITE EXTEND(10) can be active at the same time. See Section 11.5 , "Concurrent I/O Process" on page 206 for details.

### 11.3.5 QUEUE FULL status

This status is returned when a SIMPLE, ORDERED, or HEAD OF QUEUE tag message is received and the command queue is full. The I/O process is not placed in the command queue. Since one queue element is reserved for each initiator, any untagged command that does not cause Incorrect Initiator Connection will not cause QUEUE FULL status.

### 11.3.6 Device behavior on Command queuing

1. Initiators must send a Queue tag immediately after the IDENTIFY message in MESSAGE OUT phase just after SELECTION. Targets send a SIMPLE queue tag immediately after the Identify message in MESSAGE IN phase just after RESELECTION.
2. Each initiator can issue either a tagged command or an untagged command exclusively at the same time. Other initiators can exist which operate mutually exclusively with tagged or untagged commands.
3. When DQue (Mode Page A) is set to 1, if an initiator issues a tagged command, the drive returns MESSAGE REJECT message (07h) and receives that command as an untagged command.
4. Queue Tag number does not affect the order of execution.
5. If an initiator issues a command with a queue tag which is the same as the current I/O process or queued I/O process, the drive may return Incorrect Initiator connection. See Section 11.1.3 , "Incorrect Initiator Connection" on page 194.
6. A series of linked commands are a single I/O process and are assigned the queue tag established in the initial selection. A command received with a HEAD OF QUEUE tag message shall not suspend a series of linked commands for which the drive has begun execution.
7. If DQue is changed to 1 while queued commands exist, all queued commands for the all initiators will be aborted. All future commands received from any initiator with a queue tag will be processed

as untagged commands with a MESSAGE REJECT message being returned immediately after the queue tag is received by the drive.

---

## 11.4 Command reordering

Command reordering function is supported under tagged command queuing enabled (DQue, Mode Page A, is set to zero). The reorder feature reorders READ/WRITE commands in order to minimize seek time between commands. This function will improve total throughput of the drive.

---

## 11.5 Concurrent I/O Process

The Concurrent I/O process when multiple I/O processes are active (not queued) on the same logical unit at the same time. The drive may start the data phase of an I/O process while another I/O process is not completed. The following I/O processes are allowed to execute concurrently:

- Unlinked and untagged REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY or REPORT LUNS command during execution of other commands.
- One of the following commands can be executed while another one or the same one of the following commands is being executed, if those are untagged or simple tagged commands.
  - READ(6), READ EXTEND(10)
  - WRITE(6), WRITE EXTEND(10)

When an I/O process ends in CHECK CONDITION Status, the drive enters the Contingent Allegiance Condition and other queued I/O processes from all initiators on the same logical unit will not reconnect and will not complete the execution until the sense data is cleared. See Section 11.15, “Contingent allegiance Condition,” on page 209 for details. If an I/O process (P-1) encounters an error while another I/O process (P-2) is active, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION to P-1 and P-2. The drive may continue P-2 until its convenient point to suspend, but may not send a Status. After the initiator clears the Contingent Allegiance condition, the drive will resume or terminate P-2 according to QErr bit of Control mode page.

If the drive gets an error on P-1 before suspending the execution of P-2, it will keep the sense data separately from the sense data for P-1. The sense data for P-2 will be set after the Contingent Allegiance condition caused by P-1 is cleared.

---

## 11.6 Back to Back Write

Back to Back Write allows plural write commands requesting sequential LBA's to be written without losing a motor revolution.

---

## 11.7 Write Cache

If WCE (Mode Page 8) is set to one, the drive returns GOOD status and TASK COMPLETE message and goes to BUS FREE immediately after receiving the data of the last sector before actually writing the data onto the media.

If the drive detects an error after it returns a GOOD status, the drive sets a Deferred Error (Error Code of sense data = 71h) and a following command will be returned with CHECK CONDITION and the Contingent Allegiance Condition is established..

---

## 11.8 Automatic Defect Reallocation

The drive supports Automatic Defect Reallocation (ADR) for read/write operation. When an ADR occurs, the read or write command takes longer to complete. This operation is sometimes referred to as auto reassignment due to its similarity to the operation performed by REASSIGN BLOCKS command.

ADR is effective for read operation for the following commands; READ (6), READ (10), VERIFY, the verify portion of WRITE AND VERIFY when RARE (Mode Page 1) is set to one. From a certain step of ERP, a recovered sector during read operation is reallocated to a spare sector. If the recovered ERP step is considered to be appropriate to rewrite the original sector, the recovered data is rewritten to the original sector. If the read operation of rewritten data is successful, the ADR is canceled.

When ARHES (Mode Page 0) is set to one, a unrecovered read error is internally registered as a reassign candidate and, when a WRITE command is received to the failing LBA, the data is written and verified if the error still exists. If the error still occurs on the failing LBA, it will be reassigned. If the error is cleared, the drive will remove the reassign candidate for the LBA. RARE and AWRE (Mode Page 1) do not affect ARHES operation and ARHES works independently.

ADR for write operation is effective for the following commands; WRITE (6), WRITE (10), the write portion of WRITE AND VERIFY when AWRE is set to one. When a unrecovered error occurs during write operation, any error sector is reallocated to a spare sector.

---

## 11.9 Segmented Caching

Segmented Caching divides the data buffer into several buffer segments. Size and number of segments are determined by Number of Cache Segments, Cache Segment Size, SIZE and LBCSS (Mode Page 8). Number of Segments can be 1 through 255. (256 segments can be used by specifying segment size.)

The Read Ahead is a function that read data that the initiator has not yet requested to the buffer segment. This function is intended to improve performance for an initiator that frequently accesses sequential data with successive SCSI read commands. The Read Ahead works for READ (6), READ (10), VERIFY, the verify portion of WRITE AND VERIFY command when RCD (Mode Page 8) is set to zero.

Even if an error occurs during the Read ahead, the error will not be reported to the initiator. The data read before the error occurred will be stored as valid data by the Read Ahead function.

If SCSI Bus Reset or TARGET RESET message is received, all contents of segmented buffer is flushed.

---

## 11.10 Reselection Timeout

If a RESELECTION fails, the drive retries up to 16 times. Between each retry, the drive waits 200  $\mu$ s. When all the retries fail, the command is ignored.

---

## 11.11 Single Initiator Selection

For single initiator systems it is not an error to have only the drive ID bit present during SELECTION. Disconnection is not allowed for Single Initiator Selection with only one ID bit present during SELECTION. The initiator must not send an IDENTIFY message with the disconnect permission (bit 6) on.

---

## 11.12 Non-arbitrating systems

The drive cannot detect whether other SCSI devices on the SCSI bus use arbitration prior to SELECTION. As a consequence the drive allows disconnect permission to be enabled by the IDENTIFY message independent of the initiator's use of arbitration prior to SELECTION. A non-arbitrating initiator must ensure that disconnect permission in the IDENTIFY message is disabled (bit 6=0) for proper operation.

---

## 11.13 Selection without ATN

If the drive is selected without ATN signal active, no IDENTIFY message is received from the Initiator. In this case the LUN is identified as 0 and disconnect permission is disabled. The drive does not perform any phase retries. The drive still responds to a subsequent attention condition. The drive also knows the use of linked commands if selected without ATN.

Phase retries may be allowed if a subsequent IDENTIFY message is received.



---

## 11.14 Multiple Initiator Environment

### 11.14.1 Initiator Sense Data

Separate sense data is reserved for each I\_T\_L nexus and I\_T\_L\_Q nexus. Each sense data is maintained independent of commands from other initiators.

### 11.14.2 Initiator Mode Select/Mode Sense Parameters

A single shared copy of the Mode Select/Mode Sense parameters is maintained by the drive. This includes both the current and saved parameters.

### 11.14.3 Initiator Data Transfer Mode Parameter

A separate data transfer mode parameters area is reserved and maintained for each initiator.

---

## 11.15 Contingent Allegiance Condition

The contingent allegiance condition shall exist following the return of CHECK CONDITION, except for a CHECK CONDITION caused by Invalid LUN. Execution of all queued commands shall be suspended until the contingent allegiance condition is cleared.

The contingent allegiance condition can be cleared by the initiator in one of the following ways:

- By issuing a REQUEST SENSE command to the Target and receiving the sense data. This is the recommended way.
- By issuing any other command to the I\_T\_L nexus or I\_T\_L\_Q nexus that reported the fault.
- By issuing an ABORT TASK SET message to the I\_T\_L nexus or I\_T\_L\_Q nexus that reported the fault. This will also abort the current and queued I/O process from that initiator.
- By issuing a TARGET RESET message to the Target. This will also abort all current and queued I/O processes.
- By generating a RESET condition on the bus. THIS MUST BE THE LAST RESORT.
- By issuing a PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT command with Preempt and Clear service action, Contingent Allegiance Condition for the preempted initiator is cleared.

---

## 11.16 Reset

The Reset condition is used to clear all SCSI devices from the bus. This condition takes precedence over all other phases and conditions. After a reset condition is detected and the reset actions are completed, the drive returns to a 'SCSI bus enabled' state that allows the drive to accept SCSI commands.

This device uses the Hard reset option as defined in the SCSI-3 Parallel Interface Standard.

### 11.16.1 Reset Sources

There are four sources of resets detected by the drive:

<b>Reset Name</b>	<b>Reset Source</b>
<b>Power-On Reset</b>	This is the signal generated by the hardware at initial power-on
<b>Self-Initiated reset</b>	This is a software-generated reset that occurs when a internal logic error is detected by the microcode.
<b>SCSI Bus Reset</b>	This is a reset generated when the SCSI bus control line RST goes active.
<b>TARGET RESET Message</b>	This is the reset generated by the TARGET RESET Message.

### 11.16.2 Power On Reset

At Power On Reset (POR) the following bring-up operation is taken:

1. Validation of ROM and EEPROM
2. RAM test for internal RAM
3. Test and initialize HDC registers
4. RAM test for sector buffer
5. Start spindle motor (if Auto Spin up is enabled)
6. Calibration of actuator
7. Read/Write test for all heads
8. Validation of RAM code and data table (RDM, Log, Mode Page) from the reserved area

If Auto Spin up is disabled, steps 5 - 8 will be executed when the first START STOP UNIT command with Start bit.

Faults detected before successful completion of the HDC section could prevent the drive from responding to a selection.

Faults detected after the successful completion of the HDC section will be reported as CHECK CONDITION status to the initiator on the first command issued after a fault is detected except for the INQUIRY, REPORT LUNS and REQUEST SENSE command. The INQUIRY, REPORT LUNS and REQUEST SENSE command will always be responded with a GOOD status. Detecting a fault during POR will not terminate execution of the bring-up operation.

### 11.16.3 SCSI Bus Reset and TARGET RESET Message

These two reset conditions cause the following to be performed.

- If reset goes active while the power-up sequence is in progress, the power-up sequence is started over.
- If the Auto Spin up is enabled and the bring-up operation has not been completed, the bring-up operation will be re-attempted from the beginning.

**Note:** The bring-up operation, having already completed, is not rerun.

- If reset occurs while a physical sector is being written, the write operation is disabled after the current physical sector is written. Data is not lost as long as power stays valid until the physical sector being written is completed.

### 11.16.4 Self-initiated Reset

When the microcode detects an internal logic error, it takes a special bring-up sequence to save the information necessary to analyze the error. After saving the information, the normal bring-up sequence is taken to start over.

---

## 11.17 Diagnostics

The drive will execute the bring-up operation at POR to assure the correct operation of the drive by validating components (ROM, RAM, Sector Buffer, EEPROM, HDC, Spindle Motor, Actuator), checking stored information in the reserved area and EEPROM, and verifying fault detects circuits.

Self-test can be invoked by a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.

### 11.17.1 Power on Diagnostics

See Section 11.16.2 "Power On Reset" on page 210 for the description of the bring-up operation.

### 11.17.2 Self-test by SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command

#### 11.17.2 .1 Default self-test

The default self-test is invoked by the Siftst bit in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command. The response is simply a GOOD status if the test is successful or a CHECK CONDITION status if the test fails.

#### 11.17.2 .2 Short and extended self-tests

There are two other types of self-test that may be invoked using the Function Code field in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command: a short self-test and an extended self-test. The tests performed in the short and extended self-tests are described in a later section. The time required by a logical unit to complete its extended self-test is reported in the Extended Self-test Routine Completion Time (Mode Page A). The results of self-test can be retrieved by a LOG SENSE command (Log Page 10).

#### 11.17.2 .3 Self-test modes

There are two modes for short and extended self-tests: a foreground mode and a background mode. These modes are described below:

##### Foreground mode

When the drive receives a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command specifying a self-test to be performed in the foreground mode, the drive will return status for that command after the self-test has been completed. While performing a self-test in the foreground mode, the drive will respond to all commands except INQUIRY, REPORT LUNS, and REQUEST SENSE with a CHECK CONDITION status, a sense key of NOT READY and an additional sense code of LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY - SELF-TEST IN PROGRESS.

If the drive is performing a self-test in the foreground mode and a test error occurs during the test, the drive will update the self-test results log page and report CHECK CONDITION status with a sense key of HARDWARE ERROR and an additional sense code of LOGICAL UNIT FAILED SELFTEST. The initiator may obtain additional information about the failure by reading the self-test results log page. An initiator may terminate a self-test that is being performed in the foreground mode using an ABORT TASK, ABORT TASK SET, or CLEAR TASK SET task management function. If the drive receives an ABORT TASK, ABORT TASK SET, or CLEAR TASK SET task management function while performing a self-test in the foreground mode, it will abort the self-test and update the self-test results log page.

##### Background mode

When the drive receives a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command specifying a self-test to be performed in the background mode, the drive will return status for that command as soon as the command descriptor block has been validated. After returning status for the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command specifying a self-test to be performed in the background mode, the drive will initialize the self-test results log page as follows. The Function Code from the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command will be placed in the Function Code field in the log page. The self-test Results field shall be set to 0Fh. After the self-test results log page is initialized, the

drive will begin the first self-test segment. While the drive is performing a self-test in the background mode, it will terminate with a CHECK CONDITION status any SEND DIAGNOSTIC command it receives that meets either of the following criteria:

- a) The SltTst bit is one
- b) The Function Code field contains a value other than 000b or 100b.

When terminating the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command, the sense key shall be set to NOT READY and the additional sense code shall be set to LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, SELF-TEST IN PROGRESS. While performing a self-test in the background mode, the drive will suspend the self-test to service any other command than SEND DIAGNOSTIC (with Function Code field set to 100b) WRITE BUFFER (with the mode set to any download microcode option), FORMAT UNIT and START STOP UNIT command. Suspension of the self-test to service the command will occur within two seconds. If SEND DIAGNOSTIC (with Function Code field set to 100b), WRITE BUFFER (with the mode set to any download microcode option), FORMAT UNIT or START STOP UNIT command is received, the drive will abort the self-test, update the self-test log, and service the command within two seconds after the command descriptor block has been validated. An initiator may terminate a self-test that is being performed in the background mode by issuing a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command with the Function Code field set to 100b (Abort background self-test function).

**Elements common to foreground and background self-test modes**

The Progress Indication field returned in response to a REQUEST SENSE command may be used by the application client at any time during execution of a self-test to poll the progress. While executing a self-test unless an error has occurred, the drive will respond to a REQUEST SENSE command by returning a sense key of NOT READY and an additional sense code of LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY - SELF-TEST IN PROGRESS with the sense key specific bytes set for progress indication. The initiator may obtain information about the twenty most recently completed self-tests by reading the self-test results log page. This is the only method by which an initiator may obtain information about self-tests performed in the background mode. The default self-test results are not logged in the log page.

**Tests performed in self-test**

The spindle motor must be running at the correct speed for a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command to be executed.

Test	Default self-test	Foreground Short	Foreground Extended	Background Short	Background Short
Drive Ready test	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
RAM test	no	yes	yes	no	no
Spin check	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Write, Read and Compare test	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
ECC circuit test	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Seek test	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
SMART check	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
Low level format check	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
Physical head test	no	yes	yes	yes	yes
Read scan test	no	Read LBAs of error log	Read full volume	Read LBAs of error log	Read full volume
SMART check	no	yes	yes	yes	yes

Figure 198. Self-test menu for SEND DIAGNOSTIC command

- Drive ready check is to check the voltage status of 12V.
- RAM test is a read/write test for the whole area of sector buffer.
- Spin check is to check if the spindle motor is running at the correct speed.
- Write, Read and Compare test is a disk read/write test. It writes data to a certain area in the reserved area and read it from the same area to validate. Head 0 is used for this test.
- ECC circuit test is a test for ECC circuit if errors can be corrected by the circuit.
- Seek test is a test for servo. It seeks random 256 locations out of full volume.
- Low level format check is to check if the media is in the Media Format Corrupted state.
- Physical head test is a disk read/write test using the reserved area on each head.
- Read scan test is a read test. It reads the area specified in the above table.
- SMART check is to check the SMART test logs and results.

---

## 11.18 Idle Time Function

The drive performs the following functions to maintain the disk surface:

- At 1 second idle after any media access command, the head is moved to a random cylinder.
- At accumulated nominal 60 times of 1 second idle, the sweep function from a middle of disk to the cylinder 0, then a middle of disk to the most inner cylinder. The sweep function moves the head slowly using a series of short seeks. After the sweep function, the head is moved to a random cylinder. The count of nominal 60 has a randomness from 54 to 66 based on the serial number of the drive to avoid synchronized noise of the sweep in a system box. If a media access command is received during the sweep function, it is interrupted to service the host command. The next sweep function after the accumulated 60 times of 1 second idle starts from where it has been interrupted.
- At 1 second idle after 10 days from the power on or previous one, the head is unloaded to sweep the outside of cylinder 0. The head is loaded by a media access command or by the sweep function, and it stays unloaded at least for 2 seconds to reduce fluttering. The execution time of sweep function is about 2 seconds.

In addition, the drive periodically saves the PFA counters to the reserved area of the disks. The information is used by the drive to support various SCSI commands and for the purpose of failure analysis. The logging is performed at every 1 hour.

---

## 11.19 Information Unit Support

The drive supports the information unit of SPI-4 with the following limitations.

- RDDATA and WRDATA in the SPI command information unit should be zero.
- The code 100b of Task Attribute in the SPI command information unit is not supported. The code 100b is to request that the task be managed according to the rules for an automatic contingent allegiance task attribute.
- The code 40h of Task Management Functions in the SPI command information unit is not supported. The code 40h is for the task manager shall perform a clear ACA as defined in the CLEAR ACA message.
- BIDI DIRECTION in SPI L\_Q information unit should be zero.

---

## 12.0 SCSI Sense Data

---

### 12.1 SCSI Sense Data Format

Format of the sense data returned by the drive in response to the REQUEST SENSE command.

---

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Valid	Error Code (70h or 71h)						
1	RSVD = 0							
2	0	ILI	0	Sense Key				
3-6	(MSB) Information Bytes							(LSB)
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	(MSB) Product Specific Information							(LSB)
12	Additional Sense Code							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
14	FRU = 0							
15	SKSV	Sense-Key Specific Bits						
16-17	Sense-Key Specific Bytes							
18-19	Reserved = 0							
20-23	Vendor unique Error information							
24-29	Product Specific Information							
30-31	Reserved = 0							

---

Figure 199. Format of Sense Data.

---

## 12.2 Sense Data Description

### 12.2.1 Valid (Bit 7 of byte 0)

- 0 The Information Bytes (byte 3 through 6) are not defined.
- 1 The Information Bytes (byte 3 through 6) contain a valid logical block address.

### 12.2.2 Error Code (Bit 6 - 0 of byte 0)

- 70h Current Error. This indicates an error for the current command.
- 71h Deferred Error. This indicates that the error is for a previous command that has already returned a GOOD status. Such commands are FORMAT UNIT command (Immediate bit is set to one) or WRITE command in cached write.

### 12.2.3 ILI: Incorrect Length Indicator (Bit 5 of byte 2)

The ILI bit is valid for the READ LONG (3Eh) command and WRITE LONG (3Fh) command only. ILI set to one and Valid Bit set to one indicates that the requested logical block length does not match the logical block length of the data on the medium for a READ LONG or WRITE LONG command. The Information field contains residue information about the error. ILL set to zero indicates there is no incorrect length condition.

- 0 No Incorrect Length condition.
- 1 Incorrect Length Indicated.

### 12.2.4 Sense Key (Bit 3 - 0 of byte 2)

The sense key provides generic categories in which error and exception conditions can be reported. Initiators would typically use sense keys for high level error recovery procedures.

- 0h **NO SENSE**  
There is NO SENSE key information to be reported for the logical unit.
- 1h **RECOVERED ERROR**  
The last command completed successfully with some recovery action performed by the drive. More detailed information is available in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier.
- 2h **NOT READY**  
The logical unit addressed cannot be addressed. More detailed information is available in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier.
- 3h **MEDIUM ERROR**  
The command terminated with an unrecoverable error condition caused by a flaw in the media or an error in the recorded data. More detailed information is contained in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier.
- 4h **HARDWARE ERROR**  
The drive detected a unrecoverable hardware error while performing a command or during a diagnostic test. More detailed information is contained in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier.
- 5h **ILLEGAL REQUEST**  
There was an illegal parameter in the command descriptor block or additional parameter supplied as data. If an invalid parameter is found in the CDB, the command is terminated



without altering the medium. If an invalid parameter is found in parameters supplied as data, the drive might have altered the medium.

<b>6h</b>	<b>UNIT ATTENTION</b> Indicates that the drive entered in the 'Unit Attention Condition'. (See Section 11.1.5 , "Unit Attention Condition" on page 196.)
<b>7h-8h</b>	<b>Not used</b>
<b>9h</b>	<b>Vendor Specific</b>
<b>Ah</b>	<b>Not used</b>
<b>Bh</b>	<b>Aborted command</b> The drive aborted the command.
<b>Ch-Dh</b>	<b>Not Implemented</b>
<b>Eh</b>	<b>MISCOMPARE</b> Indicates that the source of data did not watch the data read from the medium.
<b>Fh</b>	<b>Reserved</b>

### 12.2.5 Information Bytes (Byte 3 through 6)

This field is only valid when Valid Bit is one.

- **ILI = 0** : This field contains the unsigned LBA associated with the sense key. The LBA reported will be within the LBA range of the command as defined in the CDB.

**Note:** An LBA other than the command LBA may be reported on the REASSIGN BLOCKS command.

- **ILI = 1** : This field contains the difference (residue) of the requested length in bytes. Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation.

### 12.2.6 Additional Sense Length (Byte 7)

Indicates the remaining number of bytes in the sense data. (It is always set to 18h.)

### 12.2.7 Command Specific Information (Byte 8 through 11)

The values in this field vary with products. Please see the individual product specification for more details.

## 12.2.8 Additional Sense Code/Qualifier (Byte 12 and 13)

The following table shows the description of the combination of Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier.

Key	Code	Qual	Description
0	0	0	No error
0h	5Dh	00h	No sense. Predictive Failure Analysis threshold reached
1h	01h	00h	Recovered write error. No index
1h	02h	00h	Recovered no seek comp
1h	03h	00h	Recovered write error. Write fault
1h	0Bh	01h	Temperature Warning
1h	0Ch	01h	Recovered write error. Auto Reallocated (AWRE=1)
1h	0Ch	03h	Recovered write error. Recommend Reassign (AWRE=0)
1h	16h	00h	Recovered write error DAM not found
1h	17h	01h	Recovered read error with retries
1h	17h	06h	Recovered read error without ECC applied. Auto reallocated (ARRE=1)
1h	17h	07h	Recovered read error without ECC applied. Recommended reassign (ARRE = 0)
1h	17h	09h	Recovered read error without ECC applied. Data rewritten. (ARRE = 1)
1h	18h	00h	Recovered read error with ECC applied. (ARRE = 0)
1h	18h	02h	Recovered read error with ECC applied. Auto reallocated (ARRE=1)
1h	18h	05h	Recovered read error with ECC applied. Recommended reassign (ARRE=0)
1h	18h	07h	Recovered read error with ECC applied. Data Rewritten (ARRE=1)
1h	1Ch	00h	Defect list not found
1h	1Ch	01h	P-List Not Found. Requested Defect List Format is not supported. Default List Format is returned (READ DEFECT DATA command Only)
1h	1Ch	02h	G-List Not Found. Requested Defect List Format is not supported. Default List Format is returned (READ DEFECT DATA command Only)
1h	1Fh	00h	Partial Defect List Transferred. Defect list longer than 64KB, 64KB of data returned. (READ DEFECT DATA command Only)
1h	44h	00h	Recovered Buffer CRC Error in writing data from buffer to media.
1h	65h	00h	Recovered voltage failure
1h	81h	00h	Internal logic error
1h	5Dh	00h	Predictive Failure Analysis threshold reached
1h	5Dh	FFh	Predictive Failure Analysis test Warning

Figure 200. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (1 of 4)

Key	Code	Qual	Description
2h	04h	00h	Not ready. Start spindle motor fail.
2h	04h	01h	Not ready. In process of becoming ready.
2h	04h	02h	Not ready. Initializing command (START STOP UNIT command) required
2h	04h	04h	Not ready. Format in progress.
2h	04h	09h	Not ready. Self-test in progress.
2h	31h	00h	Not ready. Medium format corrupted.
2h	40h	80h	Diag Fail - Bring-Up failure or degraded mode.
2h	40h	85h	Diag Fail - RAM microcode not loaded.
2h	65h	00h	Not ready. Voltage failure.
3h	03h	00h	Medium error. Write fault.
3h	10h	00h	Medium error. ID CRC error.
3h	11h	00h	Medium error. Unrecovered read error.
3h	15h	00h	Medium error. Defect in servo area
3h	16h	00h	Medium error. Data synchronization mark error. (DAM error)
3h	19h	00h	Medium error. Defect list error. A defect list error occurs when a data error is detected while reading the manufacturing defect list or while reading or writing the grown defect list.
3h	31h	00h	Medium error. Medium format corrupted.
4h	02h	00h	Hardware error. No seek complete.
4h	03h	00h	Hardware error. Write fault.
4h	11h	00h	Hardware error. Unrecovered read error in reserved area.
4h	19h	00h	Hardware error. Defect list error.
4h	32h	00h	Hardware error. No defect spare location available. This sense code indicates that REASSIGN BLOCKS command fails because all spare sectors have been used.
4h	3Eh	03h	Hardware error. Self-test failed.
4h	3Eh	04h	Hardware error. Unable to update self-test.
4h	40h	80h	Degrade Mode. Diagnostic Fail. Reserved area validity check fail.
4h	40h	85h	Degrade Mode. RAM Microcode Not Loaded.
4h	44h	00h	Hardware error. Buffer CRC Error in writing from buffer to media.
4h	81h	00h	Hardware error. Internal logic error.
4h	82h	00h	Hardware error. Command timeout.
4h	83h	00h	Hardware error. ID Table parity error.

Figure 201. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (2 of 4)

Key	Code	Qual	Description
5h	1Ah	00h	Illegal request. Parameter list length error. The number of parameters supplied is not equal to the value expected.
5h	20h	00h	Illegal request. Illegal command operation code. This command is also returned when an unsupported command code is received.
5h	21h	00h	Illegal request. Logical block address out of range.
5h	24h	00h	Illegal request. Invalid field in CDB
5h	25h	00h	Illegal request. Invalid LUN
5h	26h	00h	Illegal request. Invalid fields in the parameter list
5h	26h	02h	Parameter value invalid
5h	26h	04h	Invalid release of persistent reservation.
5h	2Ch	00h	Illegal request. Echo buffer being read before being written
5h	49h	00h	Illegal request. Invalid message error.
5h	55h	04h	Insufficient registration resources.
6h	28h	00h	Unit attention. Not ready to ready transition. (Format completed)
6h	29h	01h	Unit attention. Power On Reset occurred
6h	29h	02h	Unit attention. SCSI Bus Reset occurred
6h	29h	03h	Unit attention. TARGET RESET occurred
6h	29h	04h	Unit attention. Self Initiated Reset occurred
6h	29h	05h	Unit attention. Transceiver mode change to SE
6h	29h	06h	Unit attention. Transceiver mode change to LVD
6h	2Ah	01h	Unit attention. Mode Parameters changed
6h	2Ah	02h	Unit attention. Log select parameters changed
6h	2Ah	03h	Reservations Preempted
6h	2Ah	04h	Reservations Released
6h	2Ah	05h	Registrations Preempted
6h	2Fh	00h	Unit attention. Command cleared by another initiator
6h	3Fh	01h	Unit attention. Microcode has been changed
6h	3Fh	05h	Unit attention. Device Identifier changed.
6h	5Dh	00h	Predictive Failure Analysis threshold reached
6h	5Dh	FFh	Predictive Failure Analysis Test Warning
Bh	1Bh	00h	Aborted command. Synchronous data transfer error. (Extra ACK detected)
Bh	25h	00h	Aborted command. Unsupported LUN. The drive supports LUN 0 only
Bh	3Fh	00h	Aborted command. Echo buffer overwritten

Figure 202. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (3 of 4)

Key	Code	Qual	Description
Bh	43h	00h	Aborted command. Message reject error. A message reject error occurs when an inappropriate or unexpected message reject is received from the initiator or the initiator rejects a message twice
Bh	44h	00h	Aborted command. Buffer CRC Error in reading from buffer to host.
Bh	47h	00h	Aborted command. SCSI parity error
Bh	48h	00h	Aborted command. Initiator detected error message received. An initiator detected error occurs when the initiator detects an error, sends a message to retry, detects the error again, and sends the retry message a second time. The drive then sets check condition status with Initiator Detected Error
Bh	49h	00h	Aborted command. Inappropriate/illegal message. An inappropriate or illegal message occurs when the initiator sends a message that either is not supported or is not in a logical sequence
Bh	4Eh	00h	Aborted command. Overlapped commands attempted
Eh	1Dh	00h	Miscompare. Miscompare during VERIFY command byte check operation.

Figure 203. Sense Key / Sense Code / Qualifier combinations (4 of 4)

## 12.2.9 FRU : Field Replaceable Unit (Byte 14)

The FRU (Field Replaceable Unit) field value will always be zero.

## 12.2.10 Sense Key Specific (Byte 15 through 17)

The definition of this field is determined by the value of the sense key field.

### 12.2.10.1 Sense Key Specific - ILLEGAL REQUEST (Sense Key = 5h)

Error field pointer is returned.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	C/D	Reserved		BPV	Bit Pointer		
16 17	(MSB) Field Pointer							(LSB)

Figure 204. Field Pointer Bytes

<b>SKSV</b>	Sense-key specific valid
0	Sense-key specific field is not valid.
1	Sense-key specific field is valid.
<b>C/D</b>	Command/Data
0	Indicates that the illegal parameter was in the data parameters sent by the initiator during DATA OUT phase
1	Indicates that the illegal parameter in the command descriptor block.
<b>BPV</b>	Bit Pointer Valid
0	Bit pointer field is not valid.
1	Bit pointer field is significant.
<b>Bit Pointer</b>	Indicates which bit of the byte number reported in Field Pointer is the bit in error. When a multiple bit field is in error, the pointer points to the most significant bit of the field.
<b>Field Pointer</b>	Indicates which bytes of the command descriptor block or of the parameter data were in error. Bytes are numbered starting from zero, as shown in the tables describing the commands and parameters. When a multiple byte field id is in error, the pointer points to the most significant byte of that field.

### 12.2.10.2 Sense Key Specific - Recovered (Sense Key = 1h), HARDWARE ERROR (sense key = 4h) or MEDIUM ERROR (sense key = 3h)

Actual Retry Count is reported.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	Reserved						
16 17	(MSB)	Actual Retry Count						(LSB)

Figure 205. Actual Retry Count

**SKSV** Sense-key specific valid

0 Actual ERP Retry Count is not valid.  
1 Actual ERP Retry Count is valid.

**Actual ERP Retry Count** Actual EPR step number used to recover from the error condition.

### 12.2.10.3 Sense Key Specific - Not Ready (Sense key = 2h)

These fields are defined for the FORMAT UNIT (04h) command with the Immediate bit set to one and the SEND DIAGNOSTICS (1Dh) command with foreground self-test function. Progress indication is returned.

Byte	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	Reserved						
16 17	(MSB)	Progress Indication						(LSB)

Figure 206. Progress Indication

**SKSV** Sense-key specific valid

0 Progress Indication is not valid.  
1 Progress Indication is valid.

**Progress Indication** Indicates a percent complete in which the returned value is the numerator that has 10000h as its denominator.

## 12.2.11 Vendor Unique Error Information (Byte 18 through 19)

This field gives detailed information about errors.

---

Sense Data Byte 18	Description
01h	Continued servo unlocks, or servo ID can not be found during load/unload operation
04h	ADC calibration failure during load/unload operation
08h	AE failure
0Ch	Motor driver failure
85h	Seek time out
86h	Dummy SSM is used for contiguous 5 servo IDs
Cx or Dhx	Motor driver detected failures. Bit4: -4V failure Bit3: 12V failure Bit2: Over current detected Bit1: reserved Bit0: Thermal shut down detected (Multiple bits can be set)

---

Figure 207. Sense Data Byte 18 for Error Information



## 12.2.12 Vendor unique error information (Byte 20 through 23)

This field gives detailed information about the error. It contains a unique code which describes where the error was detected and which piece of hardware or microcode detected the error depending on current operation (that is, Bring-up operation, Read/Write operation, or SMART Alert).

### 12.2.12.1 Power On Reset/Initialization Error (Sense Key 02h)

For failures in the bring-up operation the Vendor Unique Error information bytes 20 and 21 will contain "POR Step" which indicates where the failure was detected, and the Vendor Unique Error information bytes 22 and 23 will contain "POR Error" which is the reason for failure.

---

Sense Data Byte 20	Description
Bit 7	Jumper Setting - Disable Auto Spin-Up
Bit 6	Format Corrupted - Degraded Mode
Bit 5	Soft Reset Occurred
Bit 4	RAM ERP Not Ready
Bit 3	Not Used
Bit 2	Not Used
Bit 1	Start Spinning
Bit 0	Initialization by Usage Table

---

Figure 208. Sense Data Byte 20 for POR STEP

---

Sense Data Byte 21	Description
Bit 7	RAM Table Validation
Bit 6	Head Test Processing
Bit 5	Loading Read-Only Table
Bit 4	Loading Overlay Code
Bit 3	Loading RAM Code
Bit 2	Starting Spindle Motor
Bit 1	Initiate Microcode Loading
Bit 0	Testing Sector Buffer RAM

---

Figure 209. Sense Data Byte 21 for POR STEP

---

Sense Data Byte 22	Description
Bit 7	Not used
Bit 6	Not used
Bit 5	Not used
Bit 4	Not used
Bit 3	Not Used
Bit 2	Not Used
Bit 1	Spindle Motor Spin-Up Failed
Bit 0	EEPROM Data Validation Failed

---

Figure 210. Sense Data Byte 22 POR ERROR

Sense Data Byte 23	Description
01h	HDC Test Failure
02h	Sector Buffer RAM Test Failure
03h	EEPROM Read Failure
08h	AE Write Failure
09h	Channel Calibration Failure
0Ah	Head Load Failure
10h	POR Only Fail
11h	Spin-Up Failure
12h	Reserved Area Table Failure
13h	RAM Code Read Failure
14h	RAM Code Signature Failure
15h	Overlay Code Read Failure
16h	Read-Only Table Read Failure
17h	Head Test Failure
21h	Primary Defect List Read Failure
22h	Grown Defect List Read Failure
23h	Mode Page Parameter Table Read Failure
24h	Persistent Reservation Table Read Failure
25h	SMART Parameter Table Read Failure
26h	Log Parameter Table Read Failure
27h	Usage Table Read Failure
28h	Disk Side Error Log Read Failure
29h	Host Event Log Read Failure
2Ah	Command Log Read Failure
2Bh	Code Update Log Read Failure
81h	RAM Mapping Failure-Invalid Usage ID
82h	RAM Mapping Failure-Invalid Usage Signature
83h	RAM Mapping Failure-Invalid Table Signature
84h	RAM Mapping Failure-Invalid Table Level

Figure 211. Sense Data Byte 23 for POR ERROR

### 12.2.12.2 Read/Write Error (Sense Key 03h/04h)

When an error occurs during a read or write operation, the Vendor Unique Error information will contain the HDC Registers (Status and Error).

---

Sense Data Byte 20	Description (Status)
Bit 7	Sector Count Over
Bit 6	ECC Error on LBA
Bit 5	Not used
Bit 4	Uncorrectable Error
Bit 3	Over Symbol
Bit 2	Correctable Error Preparation
Bit 1	Error On
Bit 0	Drive On

---

Figure 212. Sense Data Byte 20 for READ/WRITE ERROR

---

Sense Data Byte 21	Description (Status)
Bit 7	Memory on
Bit 6	Drive Complete
Bit 5	ID Find
Bit 4	ID Miss
Bit 3	Drive Busy
Bit 2	End of Track
Bit 1	Expected Sector Flag
Bit 0	Event Handler Busy

---

Figure 213. Sense Data Byte 21 for READ/WRITE ERROR

Sense Data Byte 22	Description (Status)
Bit 7	not used
Bit 6	not used
Bit 5	not used
Bit 4	not used
Bit 3	not used
Bit 2	Sector Pulse Missing
Bit 1	Write Abort at ID Miss Sector
Bit 0	Write Fault caused by Servo

Figure 214. Sense Data Byte 22 for READ/WRITE ERROR

Sense Data Byte 23	Description (Status)
Bit 7	Overflow
Bit 6	Write Abort
Bit 5	Write Fault
Bit 4	DAM Mismatch
Bit 3	Write Parity Error
Bit 2	Write Abort by Channel Error
Bit 1	11 bytes length of Thermal Asperity
Bit 0	1 byte length of Thermal Asperity (Read) Channel Fault Detect (Write)

Figure 215. Sense Data Byte 23 for READ/WRITE ERROR

---

### 12.2.12.3 PFA Warning (Sense Code 5Dh)

When PFA Warning occurs (Sense Code 5Dh), the Vendor Unique Error information byte 21 will contain the following reason code.

---

Sense Data Byte 21	PFA Alert Reason
05h	Power On Hour Warning
08h	Thermal Sense Warning
14h	Spare Sector Availability Warning
32h	Read Error Rate exceeding the threshold
43h	Seek Error Rate exceeding the threshold
4Ah	Write Error Rate exceeding the threshold
50h	Load/Unload Cycles Count Warning
56h	Spin Up Time Warning
5Bh	Spin Up Retry Count Warning
FFh	False Report caused by Test (Mode Page 1C)

---

Figure 216. Sense Data Byte 21 for SMART ALERT Reason Code

### 12.2.13 Physical Error Record (Byte 24 thru 29)

- ILI = 1 - This field contains zeros.
- ILI = 0 - These bytes contain the physical location of the error in cylinder, head, and sector. Byte 24 and 25 are Cylinder high and cylinder low respectively. Byte 26 is the head number. Byte 28 and 29 are sector high and low respectively.

Byte 27 is retained for compatibility and will contain the sector number for sector 0 to 254 and will be set to FFh for sector numbers greater than 254 or if the sector number is undetermined.

If the head is undetermined, its value is to FFh. If the cylinder value is undetermined, byte 24 and 25 are set to FFFFh. If the sector number is undetermined, bytes 27, 28, and 29 are all set to FFh. If cylinder, head, and sector have no relevance to the error, bytes 24 through 29 will all be set to FFh. This field is valid with Sense Key 1, 3 and 4 only.

### 12.2.14 Reserved (Byte 30 through 31)

Reserved fields are filled with zero.

---

# Index

## A

Acoustics, 43  
Actuator, 7  
Altitude, 30  
Attention Condition, 190  
Automatic Rewrite/Reallocate, 207  
Auxiliary connector, 68-pin model, 25  
Average latency, 14  
Average seek time, 13

## B

Back to Back Write, 206  
Block assignment, 10  
Breather hole, 40  
Buffering operation, 15

## C

CE Mark, 45  
Command overhead, 12  
Command Processing During Execution of Active I/O process, 194  
Command Processing During Startup and Format Operations, 197  
Command processing while reserved, 203  
Command queuing, 204  
Command reordering, 206  
Concurrent I/O Process, 206  
Contingent Allegiance Condition, 209  
Control electronics, 7  
Cooling requirements, 31  
Corrosion test, 30, 32, 33  
CSA standard conformity, 46  
C-Tick Mark, 45  
Cylinder allocation, 11  
Cylinder switch time, 14

## D

Data integrity, 17  
Data reliability, 34  
Data sheet, 9  
Data transfer speed, 15  
Deferred Error, 197  
Degraded Mode, 197  
Diagnostics, 212  
Drive ready time, 14

## E

ECC on the fly correction, 34  
Electrical interface specification, 21  
Electromagnetic compatibility, 45  
Equipment errors, 34  
Equipment Status, 17  
Error recovery procedure, 17

## F

Failure prediction ( PFA / S.M.A.R.T.), 34  
Fixed disk subsystem, 7  
Flammability, 46  
Formatted capacity, 9  
Full stroke seek time, 13

## G

German Safety Mark, 46  
G-List, 19

## H

Head disk assembly, 7  
Head switch time, 14  
Hot plug/unplug, 24

## I

Idle Time Function, 214  
IEC Compliance, 46  
Incorrect Initiator Connection, 194  
Instantaneous buffer-host transfer rate, 15  
Instantaneous disk-buffer transfer rate, 15  
Interface connector, 38  
Invalid LUN in Identify Message, 194

## J

Jumper signal description on J-4, 28  
Jumper signal description on J-6, 27

## L

Labels, 44

## M

Maximum Temperature Gradient, 30  
Maximum Wet Bulb Temperature, 30  
Mechanical positioning, 13

Mechanical specifications, 36  
Mounting, 39  
Multiple Initiator Environment, 209

## **N**

Non-arbitrating systems, 208  
Non-operating conditions, 30

## **O**

Operating conditions, 30  
Option jumper block, 26

## **P**

Performance characteristics, 12  
Persistent Reservation, 116  
P-List, 19  
Power connector, 21  
Power requirements, 32  
Priority commands, 204  
Probability of uncorrectable data error rate, 34  
Product ID, 10

## **R**

Random access, 16  
Reassigned format, 19  
Relative humidity, 30  
Reselection Timeout, 208  
Reset, 210  
Reset condition, 210

## **S**

Safety, 46  
SCSI bus connector, 22  
SCSI bus Electrical characteristics, 24  
SCSI Bus Related Error Handling Protocol, 191  
SCSI bus terminator, 24  
SCSI cable, 24  
SCSI Commands, 49  
SCSI Control Byte, 50

SCSI Message System, 177  
SCSI Protocol, 193  
SCSI SENSE DATA, 215  
SCSI signal connector - 68-pin, 22  
SCSI Signal Connector - 80-pin, 23  
SCSI Status Byte, 175  
SCSI Status Byte Reporting, 193  
Seek/ID miscompare errors, 34  
Segmented Caching, 208  
Selection without ATN, 208  
Sense Data Description, 216  
Sense Data Format, 215  
Shipped format, 19  
Shock, 41  
Simple sequential access, 16  
Single Initiator Selection, 208  
Spindle stop time, 14  
Start /stop cycles, 34  
Supported Message Functions, 189  
Supported Messages, 177  
Sustained disk-buffer transfer rate, 15

## **T**

Temperature, 30  
Temperature warning, 35  
Terminator power, 24  
Throughput, 16

## **U**

UL standard conformity, 46  
Unit Attention Condition, 196

## **V**

Vibration, 41

## **W**

Worldwide ID, 63  
Write Cache, 207





© International Business Machines Corporation 2002

[www.ibm.com/harddrive](http://www.ibm.com/harddrive)

**IBM Technology Group Support Center**

Telephone: 888.426.5214 or 507.286.5825

Fax: 507.253.3748

E-mail: [drive@us.ibm.com](mailto:drive@us.ibm.com)

**Singapore Technology Group Support Center**

Telephone: (65)6418.9595 or 1800.418.9595

E-mail: [drive@sg.ibm.com](mailto:drive@sg.ibm.com)

**UK Technology Group Support Center**

Telephone: 44.1475.898.125

E-mail: [drive@uk.ibm.com](mailto:drive@uk.ibm.com)

**Germany Technology Group Support Center**

Telephone: 49.7032.153050

E-mail: [drive@de.ibm.com](mailto:drive@de.ibm.com)

**IBM Storage Systems Division**

5600 Cottle Road

San Jose, CA 95193

[www.ibm.com/storage](http://www.ibm.com/storage)

Printed in the United States of America

02-2002

All Rights Reserved

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation. Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Product description data represents IBM's design objectives and is provided for comparative purposes; actual results may vary depending on a variety of factors. Product claims are true as of the date of the first printing. This product data does not constitute a warranty. Questions regarding IBM's warranty terms or the methodology used to derive this data should be referred to an IBM representative. Data subject to change without notice.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make them available in all countries in which IBM operates.

Document # S07N9742-03

Publication # 3630

---